
Unit
5
Go explore!
In this unit, the students will ...
read and understand the use of pronouns in texts.
understand and use phrasal verbs.
listen for specific details.
ask for further details in conversations.
guess the meaning of words from context.
understand and use the present simple passive.
write a simple biography using sequencing words.
understand the moral of a story.
Students exploring!

Lesson (1) AHMAD IBN MAJID

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

astronomy	علم الفلك	fascinated by	مفتون بـ - مهتم بـ	peninsula	شبه جزيرة
navigate	يبحر	navigator	ملاح - بحار	sailors	بحارة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

person	شخص	Oman	دولة عمان	compass	بوصلة
master	سيد - ماهر	great	عظيم - رائع	design	يصمم - تصميم
ocean	محيط	reliable	يُعتمد عليه - موثوق به	routes	طرق
intelligent	ذكي - ماهر	poems	قصائد - شعر	language	لغة
winds	رياح	famous	مشهور	geography	جغرافيا
space	فضاء	planets	كواكب	history	تاريخ
stars	نجوم	monsoons	الرياح الموسمية	math	علم الرياضيات
except	ما عدا	explorer	مستكشف	studies	دراسات

Definitions تعريفات

navigator	a person who can find their way at sea	ملاح
astronomy	the study of everything in space – the planets and the stars	علم الفلك
sailors	people who work on a ship or boat	بحارة
peninsula	a piece of land with sea all around it, except for one side	شبه جزيرة
fascinated by	very interested in	مفتون بـ - مهتم بـ
navigate	find your way at sea	يبحر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
improve	يحسن	improved	improved
describe	يصف	described	described

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

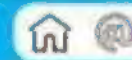
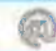
Present		Past	P.P
find	يجد	found	found
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
have/ has	يملك - لديه	had	had
see	يرى	saw	seen
write	يكتب	wrote	written
know	يعرف	knew	known
become	يصبح	became	become

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the first Arab seaman	أول بحار عربي	the Indian Ocean	المحيط الهندي
hundreds of years ago	منذ مئات السنين	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
the Arabian Peninsula	شبه الجزيرة العربية	over the years	على مر السنين
across the world	عبر العالم	travel safely	يسافر بأمان
a piece of	قطعة من	listen to	يستمع إلى
known as	معروف بأنه	on the sea	في البحر
at the young age	في سن صغير		

Listen and read.

Famous navigators


Ahmed Ibn Majid



Have you heard about Ahmad Ibn Majid? He is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman, and he learned how to **navigate** the seas. "Navigate" means "to find your way around".

هل سمعت عن أحمد بن ماجد؟ إنه الشخص الذي سهّل علينا السفر في البحر اليوم. كان ابن ماجد أول بحار عربي، ويعلم الملاحة في البحار. "الملاحة" يعني "العثور على طريقك".

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago. He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. As a child, he was **fascinated by** the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather, who were great **sailors**. They also had their own ships. Before Ibn Majid was born, his dad and grandfather sailed the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean. Ibn Majid wanted to explore the seas and oceans, too. At the young age of seven, he went on his first journey on the sea.

عاش أحمد بن ماجد منذ مئات السنين، ولد عام ١٤٣٢ في ما يعرف الآن بدولة عمان. عندما كان طفلاً، كان مفتونا بالبحر. كان يحب الاستماع إلى قصص الإبحار من والده وجده اللذين كانا بحارين عظيمين. وكان لديهم أيضا سفنهم الخاصة. قبل أن يولد ابن ماجد، أبحر والده وجده في البحر الأحمر والمحيط الهندي. أراد ابن ماجد استكشاف البحار والمحيطات أيضا. في سن السابعة، ذهب في أول رحلة له في البحر.

Ibn Majid was a very intelligent man and studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and **astronomy**. Astronomy was important because the stars at night helped sailors to find their way. Ibn Majid's studies helped him understand the winds, the monsoons, and the stars in the sky.

كان ابن ماجد رجلاً ذكيا جدا ودرس كثيرا. لقد تعلم اللغات وتعلم الرياضيات والجغرافيا وعلم الفلك. كان علم الفلك مهمًا لأن النجوم في الليل ساعدت البحارة في العثور على طريقهم. دراسات ابن ماجد ساعدته على فهم الرياح والرياح الموسمية والنجوم في السماء.

As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master **navigator**. He used a compass, but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved the design. It was then more reliable for sailors to use.

ومع تقدمه في السن، أصبح ابن ماجد معروفًا بأنه ملاح محترف. لقد استخدم بوصلة، ولكن عندما رأى أنها يمكن أن تعمل بشكل أفضل في البحار، قام بتحسين التصميم. ثم أصبح استخدام البحارة لها أكثر موثوقية.

Over the years, Ibn Majid wrote 38 books describing what he knew. Some of his books had information about routes to different places, and some described the history of sailing. They helped sailors travel from the Arabian **Peninsula** to India, East Africa, and other places. He even wrote poems!



وعلى مر السنين، كتب ابن ماجد ٣٨ كتابًا يصف فيها ما يعرفه. احتوت بعض كتبه على معلومات حول الطرق المؤدية إلى أماكن مختلفة، وبعضها وصف تاريخ الإبحار. لقد ساعدت كُتبه البحارة على السفر من شبه الجزيرة العربية إلى الهند وشرق إفريقيا وأماكن اخرى. حتى انه كتب قصائد شعرا!

Across the world, Ahmad Ibn Majid is still famous. His books have helped many sailors for hundreds of years. With Ibn Majid's help, we can all travel safely on the seas.

ولا يزال أحمد بن ماجد مشهوراً في جميع أنحاء العالم. وقد ساعدت كتبه العديد من البحارة لمئات السنين. وبمساعدة ابن ماجد، يمكننا جميعًا السفر بأمان عبر البحار.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

9

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ahmed Ibn Majid was born in ....
   a) 1430 b) 1431 c) 1432 d) 1433
2. As a child, he was fascinated by the ....
   a) river b) sea c) lake d) ocean
3. He loved to listen to .... about sailing.
   a) stories b) news c) the radio d) music
4. His father and grandfather were great ....
   a) players b) teachers c) doctors d) sailors

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

monsoons - astronomy - languages - sailors - doctors

Ibn Majid was a very intelligent man and studied a lot. He learned, 1)........................., and learned about math, geography, and 2)......................... Astronomy was important because the stars at night helped 3)......................... to find their way. Ibn Majid's studies helped him understand the winds, the 4)........................., and the stars in the sky.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... is a person who can find their way at sea.
   a) footballer b) navigator c) doctor d) teacher
2. .... is the study of everything in space – the planets and the stars.
   a) Geography b) Geology c) Astronomy d) History
3. .... are people who work on a ship or a boat.
   a) Sailors b) Engineers c) Bakers d) Butchers
4. "To find your way at sea" means to ....
   a) understand b) swim c) fly d) navigate
5. ".." means very interested in.
   a) Fascinated by b) Famous for c) Listen to d) Look after

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master navigator. He used a compass, but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved the design. It was then more reliable for sailors to use. Over the years, Ibn Majid wrote 38 books describing what he knew. Some of his books had information about routes to different places, and some described the history of sailing. They helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India, East Africa, and other places. He even wrote poems! Across the world, Ahmad Ibn Majid is still famous. His books have helped many sailors for hundreds of years. With Ibn Majid's help, we can all travel safely on the seas.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed Ibn Majid used a .... on the seas.
   a) **clock** b) **compass** c) **tablet** d) **watch**
2. Ibn Majid wrote .... books describing what he knew.
   a) **eighty-three** b) **eighty-four** c) **forty-eight** d) **thirty-eight**
3. Some of Ibn Majid's books described the history of ....
   a) **swimming** b) **shopping** c) **sailing** d) **hiking**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How did the books help sailors? ....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. write - did - What - type - of books - Ibn Majid - ?

   ....
2. to navigate - Ibn Majid - learned - the seas - how - .

   ....
3. ago - of - Ibn Majid - lived - hundreds - years - .

   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Ahmed Ibn Majid

Guiding elements:

(first Arab seaman - fascinated by - learned - books)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Vocabulary الكلمات

the world	العالم	disability	إعاقة	answer	إجابة
luckily	لحسن الحظ	countries	دول	helpful	متعاون
lucky	محظوظ	riad	رياض "منزل مغربي"	bears	دببة
Morocco	دولة المغرب	excited	متحمس	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
Moroccans	المغاربة "شعب المغرب"	special	خاص	wildcats	قطط برية
Marrakech	مراكش	swimming pool	حمام سباحة	wolves	ذئاب
organized	منظم	French	فرنسي	form	استمارة
staff	هيئة الموظفين	Spain	أسبانيا	airport	مطار
phrases	عبارات	problem	مشكلة	wonderful	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
see	يرى	saw	seen
say	يقول	said	said
tell	يخبر	told	told
wake up	يوقظ - يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
put	يضع	put	put

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the internet	على الإنترنت	famous for	مشهور بـ
a lot of	الكثير من	hiking shoes	حذاء للتنزه على الأقدام
a walking trip	نزهة سيرًا على الأقدام	golden eagles	النسور الذهبية
far away	بعيدًا		
Pecos de Europe national park			حديقة بيكوس دي يوروب الوطنية

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Blog

Log in Upload Download

Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I decided to travel around the world and see as many countries as possible. My mom said "yes"! I was so excited! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair, so we had to be very organized, but that wasn't a problem. We **filled in** the forms to tell the train and plane staff about my disability, and everybody was very helpful. I **looked up** the best places to visit on the internet before we left.

أهلاً! اسمي لوسي. عندما كان عمري ١٤ عامًا، قررت السفر حول العالم ورؤية أكبر عدد ممكن من البلدان. قالت أمي "نعم"! لقد كنت متحمسة جدًا! قررنا الذهاب إلى المغرب أولاً. أنا أستخدم كرسيًا متحركًا، لذا كان علينا أن نكون منظمين للغاية، لكن ذلك لم يكن مشكلة. لقد ملأنا النماذج لإخبار طاقم القطار والطائرة عن إعاقتي، وكان الجميع متعاونين للغاية. لقد بحثت عن أفضل الأماكن للزيارة على الإنترنت قبل مغادرتنا.

My favorite place in Morocco was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We stayed at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom **woke** me **up** early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I **picked up** a lot of French phrases while I was there. When the taxi **dropped** us **off** at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is a wonderful place!

كان المكان المفضل لدي في المغرب هو مراكش. أحببت الطعام هناك. بقينا في رياض، وهو منزل خاص في المغرب. كان هناك حمام سباحة، وقد أيقظتني أمي مبكرًا حتى أتمكن من السباحة كل يوم. يتحدث المغاربة الفرنسية، لذلك تعلمت الكثير من العبارات الفرنسية أثناء وجودي هناك. عندما أوصلتنا سيارة الأجرة إلى المطار، شعرت بالحزن قليلاً. المغرب مكان رائع!

Blog

Log in Upload Download

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I went on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom **saw** us **off** at the airport. When we landed, we got a bus to the Picos de Europe national park. It's very beautiful, and it was quite easy to walk.

مرحبًا، أنا مازن! في العام الماضي، ذهبت في رحلة سيرًا على الأقدام في إسبانيا مع والدي. لقد ودعتنا أمي في المطار. عندما هبطنا، ركبنا حافلة إلى حديقة بيكوس دي يوروب الوطنية. إنها جميلة جدًا، وكان من السهل جدًا المشي.

We went in June, when it wasn't too hot. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what they were. I **figured** the answer **out** by looking online – they were golden eagles. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears and wildcats! Luckily, they were far away! The park is famous for its wolves, but sadly, we didn't see any. It was a great trip, and I was sad to **put** my hiking shoes **away!**

لقد ذهبنا في شهر يونيو، عندما لم يكن الجو حارًا جدًا. لقد حالفنا الحظ برؤية بعض الطيور الجميلة، لكننا لم نعرف ما هم. لقد توصلت إلى الإجابة من خلال البحث عبر الإنترنت ، لقد كانوا نسورًا ذهبية. كان ذلك مميزًا جدًا. لقد رأينا أيضًا بعض الدببة البنية والقطط البرية! ومن حسن الحظ أنهم كانوا بعيدين! تشتهر الحديقة بالذئاب، لكن للأسف لم نرى أيًا منها. لقد كانت رحلة رائعة، وكنت حزينًا لخلع حذائي المخصص للمشي ووضعه في مكانه!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.





Phrasal verbs

الأفعال الاصطلاحية

A phrasal verb is a verb that is followed by a preposition. The preposition changes the meaning of the verb.

الفعل الاصطلاحي: عبارة عن فعل يليه حرف جر وحرف الجر يغير معنى الفعل.

She **saw** the picture in the book. (see = notice with your eyes) هنا "see" بمعنى يرى

She **saw off** her husband before he traveled. (saw off = said goodbye)

هنا "see off" بمعنى يودع

Look at the phrasal verbs again. When phrasal verbs have an object, this affects the word order.

لاحظ: عندما يكون للفعل الاصطلاحي مفعول فهذا يؤثر على ترتيب الجملة.

عندما يكون المفعول اسماً، يمكن أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر أو بعد حرف الجر.

e.g. I **filled** the form **in** before I left. (the form is the object). الاستمارة هنا مفعول

You can also say: I **filled in** the form before I left. هنا حرف الجر يتبع الفعل مباشرة.

When the object is a pronoun, we follow this word order.

عندما يكون المفعول ضميراً، فيجب أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر

I **filled** it **in** before I left. (it is the object; it is a pronoun)

لاحظ معاني الأفعال الاصطلاحية الآتية:

fill in	complete	يكمل - يملأ (استمارة)
wake up	stop sleeping	يستيقظ
pick up	learn	يتعلم
see off	say goodbye to somebody leaving	يودع
figure out	discover	يكتشف
put away	put something in its place	يضع الشيء في مكانه
drop off	take somebody to a place	يوصل شخصا إلى مكان
look up	find out something	يبحث عن - يعرف

Help your child identify phrasal verbs.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأفعال الاصطلاحية.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Could you fill .... this form, please?
   a) in b) out c) of d) on
2. I asked my dad to .... me up every day.
   a) look b) wake c) shut d) put
3. We .... a lot of lessons at school.
   a) pick up b) see off c) look up d) put away
4. My friends .... me off at the airport last week.
   a) wanted b) learned c) watched d) saw
5. The clever student figured the answer .... quickly.
   a) in b) at c) out d) of
6. The room was messy so I put everything ....
   a) way b) away c) ways d) a way
7. If you don't know the meaning of a difficult word, ... in a dictionary.
   a) look it up b) look up it c) fill it in d) fill in it
8. My dad always .... me off at my school.
   a) makes b) looks c) drops d) fills

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My mom saw me .... (of) at the airport.
2. What information did you look .... (on)?
3. What language did you .... (pack) up?
4. Did you put .... (way) your shoes?
5. I filled .... (on) an application form.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When Lucy was ...., she decided to travel around the world.
   a) twelve b) thirteen c) fourteen d) fifteen
2. They decided to go to ....
   a) Tunisia b) Morocco c) Oman d) Libya
3. Lucy uses a/an ...., so they had to be very organized.
   a) bike b) chair c) armchair d) wheelchair
4. We filled in the forms to tell the train and .... staff about my disability.
   a) car b) metro c) plane d) tram

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

woke - riad - food - picked - looked

My favorite place in Morocco was Marrakech. I loved the 1) .... there. We stayed at a 2) ...., which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom 3) .... me up early, so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I 4) .... up a lot of French phrases while I was there.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We filled .... the forms when we arrived.
   a) in b) on c) at d) of
2. I .... up the best places to visit on the internet.
   a) saw b) looked c) filled d) dropped
3. My mom .... me up early in the morning.
   a) took b) dropped c) woke d) filled
4. I picked .... a lot of French phrases while I was in Morocco.
   a) of b) at c) on d) up

5. When the taxi dropped us ________ at the airport, I felt a bit sad.
   a) off b) in c) away d) out
6. My mom ________ us off at the airport.
   a) picked b) saw c) put d) woke
7. I figured the answer ________ by looking online.
   a) at b) on c) off d) out
8. It was a great trip, but I was sad to put my hiking shoes ________.
   a) off b) away c) at d) of
9. She saw ________ her husband before he traveled.
   a) on b) off c) in d) at
10. I .... in the form before I left.
   a) filled b) felt c) fell d) woke
11. What information did you look ________?
   a) for b) up c) in d) out
12. What language did you ________ up?
   a) drop b) put c) wake d) pick

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I went on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom saw us off at the airport. When we landed, we got a bus to the Picos de Europe national park. It's very beautiful, and it was quite easy to walk. We went in June, when it wasn't too hot. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what they were. I figured the answer out by looking online – they were golden eagles. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears and wildcats! Luckily, they were far away! The park is famous for its wolves, but sadly, we didn't see any. It was a great trip, and I was sad to put my hiking shoes away!

Lesson (2)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mazen went on a walking trip in Spain with his ________________ .
   a) **father** b) **mother** c) **sister** d) **brother**
2. They went to Spain in ________________ , when it wasn't too hot.
   a) **July** b) **June** c) **May** d) **April**
3. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to the ________________ .
   a) **trips** b) **bears** c) **wildcats** d) **birds**

17 **Answer the following questions.**

4. What's the main idea of the text?

____

5. What is the park famous for?

____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the - up - My dad - wakes - in - morning - me - .

____

2. my clothes - Mom - are - and - I - putting away - .

____

3. to the beach - up - They - looking - are - the route - .

____

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A trip to the Pyramids

Guiding elements:

(last week - Giza - tourists - Sphinx - took photos)

____

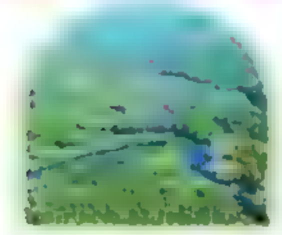
____

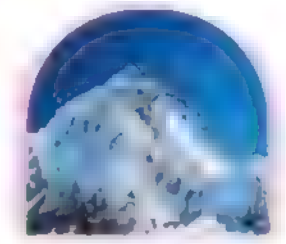
____



AMAZING ADVENTURES!

Listen and say. استمع وقل.


The Amazon
نهر الأمازون


The Himalayas
جبال الهيمالايا


The desert
الصحراء


The Arctic
القطب الشمالي


cooker
بوتجاز

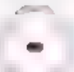

camera
كاميرا


canoe
[illegible]


tent
خيمة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

adventure	مغامرة	challenges	تحديات
go back	يعود	place	مكان
the same	نفس الشيء	skills	مهارات
difficult	صعب	important	مهم
take photos	يلتقط صوراً	put up a tent	ينصب خيمة



Imagine an adventure. Then make notes.

Where did you go?	The Amazon
What skills did you learn?	To catch fish
Was it difficult?	No
What did you like best about the trip?	Sailing in a canoe
What were the challenges of the trip?	Dangerous animals

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

challenges - Himalayas - fine - skills

Omar : Hi, Adel. How are you?
Adel : Hi, Omar. I'm 1) ____________ , thanks.
Omar : Where did you go last week?
Adel : I went on a trip to the 2) ____________ .
Omar : What 3) ____________ did you learn?
Adel : I learned to climb the mountains.
Omar : What were the 4) ____________ of the trip?
Adel : The Himalayas are steep and the weather is very cold.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

19 I went on a trip to the ____________ River.
a) **Himalayas** b) **Desert** c) **Arctic** d) **Amazon**

2. We ____________ some photos with our cameras.
a) **went** b) **took** c) **filled** d) **woke**

3. We ____________ up some tents next to the mountains.
a) **put** b) **stay** c) **wake** d) **figure**

4. We took a .... on the river.
a) **tent** b) **canoe** c) **car** d) **bus**

5. Would you like to go ____________ to the same place?
a) **pack** b) **back** c) **pick** d) **beak**

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. use - a - We - make - food - to - cooker - .

____

2. to - Would - you - like - go - an adventure - on - ?

____

3. cold - the - It's - in - very - Arctic - .



OMAR HEGAZY

Key vocabulary — كلمات أساسية

banker	موظف بنك - مصرفي	motorbike	دراجة نارية
crutch	عكاز	hold his breath	يحبس أنفاسه
fins	زعانف	inspire	يلهم

Extra vocabulary — كلمات إضافية

interesting	مثير / شيق	rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
inspiring	ملهم	snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب التنفس
Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
athlete	لاعب رياضي	active	نشيط
disabled	عاجز	disabilities	إعاقات
female	أنثى	incredible	لا يصدق
part	جزء	Lebanon	لبنان
diver	غواص	fitness	اللياقة البدنية

Definitions — تعريفات

break a world record — يحطم الرقم القياسي العالمي

to do something better than anybody else in the world

follow (your) dreams — تتبع أحلامك

to do something in life that you really want to do

a world-record-holding athlete — لاعب يحمل رقم قياسي عالمي

an athlete who has broken a world record

fins long rubber things to put on your feet to help you swim faster — زعانف

crutch something to put under your arm to help you walk better — عكاز

inspire to motivate and guide others — يلهم

banker someone who works in a bank — مصرفي - موظف بنك

hold your breath — تحبس أنفاسك

keep your breath inside your chest without breathing out

motorbike a type of transportation on two wheels, with an engine — دراجة نارية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
achieve	يحقق - ينجز	achieved	achieved
remove	يزيل	removed	removed
train	يتدرب	trained	trained
motivate	يحفز	motivated	motivated
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	cycled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
show	يعرض - يبين	showed	shown
tell	يخبر	told	told
'eak	يكسر - يحطم	broke	broken
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
give	يعطي	gave	given
hold	يمسك	held	held
become	يصبح	became	become
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work as + وظيفة	يعمل كـ	work hard	يعمل بجد
go well	يسير على ما يرام	keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته البدنية
on his motorbike	على دراجته البخارية	had an accident	تعرض لحادث
feel free	يشعر بحرية	become stronger	يصبح أكثر قوة
for a distance of	لمسافة تبلغ	put on	يرتدي
break the world record	يحطم الرقم القياسي	the Aqaba Gulf	خليج العقبة
in eight hours	في ٨ ساعات	give talks	يلقي محاضرات
all around the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	as well as	بالإضافة إلى

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.



Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man who is a **world-record-holding athlete**. He shows that when you work hard, you can achieve amazing things. He is very inspiring, but his life has not always been easy.

عمر حجازي رجل مثير للاهتمام للغاية وهو رياضي يحمل رقمًا قياسيًا عالميًا. لقد أظهر أنه عندما تعمل بجد، يمكنك تحقيق أشياء مذهلة. إنه ملهم للغاية، لكن حياته لم تكن دائمًا سهلة.

At the age of 25, Omar's life was going well. He had a good job as a **banker** in the Sinai Peninsula, and he was very active. He enjoyed sports, including rock climbing, snorkeling, and keeping fit.

في سن الخامسة والعشرين، كانت حياة عمر تسير على ما يرام. كان لديه وظيفة جيدة كمصرفي في شبه جزيرة سيناء، وكان نشطًا للغاية. كان يستمتع بالرياضة، بما في ذلك تسلق الصخور والغطس والحفاظ على لياقته البدنية.

One day, he was traveling along the road on his motorbike when he had an accident. The doctors told him that, unfortunately, they had to remove part of his leg. Omar had to learn to use a crutch, and then a wheelchair. Omar learned about two important athletes who are also disabled. The first athlete is Dareen Barbar, a female athlete from Lebanon who has only one leg. The second person to inspire Omar is Faisal Al-Mosawi, who is a wheelchair diver.

في أحد الأيام، كان يقود دراجته النارية على الطريق عندما تعرض لحادث. أخبره الأطباء أنهم للأسف اضطروا إلى إزالة جزء من ساقه. كان على عمر أن يتعلم استخدام العكاز، ثم الكرسي المتحرك. وتعرف عمر على اثنين من الرياضيين المهمين الذين يعانون من إعاقة أيضًا. الرياضية الأولى هي دارين بربر، وهي رياضية من لبنان ولديها ساق واحدة فقط. الشخص الثاني الذي ألهم عمر هو فيصل الموسوي، وهو غواص على كرسي متحرك.

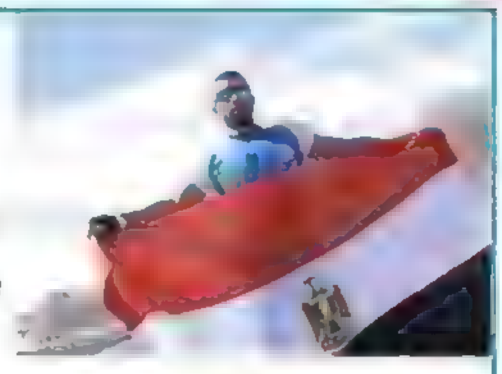
So, Omar began swimming. In the water, he felt free and his body moved easily. Slowly, Omar became stronger, and he trained hard. He decided that he wanted to **break a world record**, too. Omar tried to see if he could **hold his breath** underwater longer than anybody else.

بدأ عمر السباحة. في الماء، شعر بالحرية وتحرك جسده بسهولة. ببطء، أصبح عمر أقوى، وتدرب بجد. لقد قرر أنه يريد تحطيم رقم قياسي عالمي أيضًا. حاول عمر أن يرى ما إذا كان يستطيع حبس أنفاسه تحت الماء لفترة أطول من أي شخص آخر.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

Lesson (4)



Omar trained hard, and in 2022, he could swim underwater for a distance of 56.48 meters! He then put on fins and swam for longer – 76.7 meters! He broke world records with both these swims. Since these incredible swims, Omar has also swum across the Aqaba Gulf. He completed the swim in eight hours! As well as this, Omar cycled from Taba in the Sinai Peninsula to the Egyptian Pyramids in Giza. He never stops!

تدرب عمر بجد، وفي عام ٢٠٢٢، تمكن من السباحة تحت الماء لمسافة ٥٦,٤٨ مترًا! ثم ارتدى الزعانف وسبح لمسافة أطول – ٧٦,٧ مترًا! لقد حطم الأرقام القياسية العالمية في كلتا السباحتين. ومنذ هذه السباحة الرائعة، سبح عمر أيضًا عبر خليج العقبة. أكمل السباحة في ثماني ساعات! بالإضافة إلى ذلك، سافر عمر بالدراجة من طابا في شبه جزيرة سيناء إلى الأهرامات المصرية في الجيزة. إنه لا يتوقف أبدًا!

Today, Omar Hegazy is a very happy man, and gives talks to **inspire** others. He wants to help other people with disabilities **follow their dreams** and believe they can do anything.

23

اليوم عمر حجازي رجل سعيد للغاية، ويلقي المحاضرات لإلهام الآخرين. إنه يريد مساعدة الأشخاص ذوي الهمم الآخرين على اتباع أحلامهم والاعتقاد بأنهم يستطيعون فعل أي شيء.

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Omar Hegazy worked in a restaurant. ☐
2. Omar had a terrible accident on his motorbike. ☐
3. Omar had to remove part of his arm. ☐
4. Omar now helps people with disabilities to achieve their dreams. ☐

2 Read again and answer.

1. What sport does Omar do?

____

2. Which world records did Omar break?

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Omar Hegazy is a very .... man.
   a) interesting b) boring c) amazing d) exciting
2. Omar Hegazy is a/an ....
   a) doctor b) athlete c) teacher d) runner
3. He is very ....
   a) disappointing b) hurting c) inspiring d) disturbing
4. His life hasn't always been very ....
   a) tough b) hard c) difficult d) easy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

24

lazy - leg - active - banker - motorbike

At the age of 25, Omar's life was going well. He had a good job as a 1) .... in the Sinai Peninsula, and he was very 2) .... He enjoyed sports, including rock climbing, snorkeling, and keeping fit. One day, he was traveling along the road on his 3) .... when he had an accident. The doctors told him that, unfortunately, they had to remove part of his 4) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When you work hard, you can .... amazing things.
   a) remove b) achieve c) train d) cycle
2. At the age of 25, Omar worked .... a banker.
   a) as b) like c) same d) similar
3. Omar was travelling along the road on his ....
   a) canoe b) boat c) ship d) motorbike

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. The doctor removed part of Omar's leg, so he had to use a ________ .

a) **watch** b) **clock** c) **bike** d) **crutch**

5. Omar decided that he wanted to ________ a world record.

a) **break** b) **protect** c) **remove** d) **give**

6. Omar tried to see if he could ________ his breath underwater.

a) **catch** b) **make** c) **break** d) **hold**

7. He put ________ fins and swam for 76.7 meters!

a) **in** b) **out** c) **on** d) **off**

8. Omar Hegazy helps people with disabilities ________ their dreams.

a) **kill** b) **follow** c) **stop** d) **hold**

25 Omar Hegazy gives talks to ________ others.

a) **stop** b) **hate** c) **hit** d) **inspire**

10. Taba is in the ________ Peninsula in Egypt.

a) **Arabian** b) **Sinai** c) **Cairo** d) **Siwa**

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a crutch - had to - Omar Hegazy - use - the accident - after - .

____

2. a banker - Omar Hegazy - had - job - a good - as - .

____

3. hours - eight - He - completed - the swim - in - .

____

4. remove - had - Omar - to - part of - leg - his - .

____

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

At the age of 25, Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He was taken to hospital, where the doctors removed part of his leg. Then, Omar heard about two disabled athletes, and he wanted to be like them. He started training hard and working on his fitness. Amazingly, he broke a world record in holding his breath underwater. Now, Omar motivates people all around the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. At the age of ...., Omar worked as a banker.
   a) **fifty-two** b) **twenty-five** c) **fifteen** d) **twenty**
2. Omar was .... his life.
   a) **hating** b) **disliking** c) **enjoying** d) **losing**
3. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   a) **two athletes** b) **Omar** c) **doctors** d) **sports**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did the doctors do to Omar? ....
5. What was amazing about Omar? ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Omar Hegazy

Guiding elements:

(athlete - banker - accident - a world record)



LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

course	منهج دراسي - دورة	spacesuit	بدلة الفضاء
model spaceship	مجسم سفينة فضاء	mission	مهمة
attached to	مرتبط بـ - معلق بـ	cleaning wipes	مناديل مبللة للتنظيف
marathon	ماراثون (سباق)	astronaut	رائد فضاء

Extra vocabulary كلمات اضافية

career	مهنة	physically strong	قوي بدنيا	regularly	بانتظام
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	science	علوم	packed	معبأ
experience	تجربة - خبرة	sleeping bags	أكياس النوم	organized	منظم
drawers	أدراج	liquids	سوائل	weak	ضعيف
gravity	الجاذبية	bath	بانيو - حوض استحمام	wall	حائط
shower	دش - حمام	tidy	مرتب	team	فريق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

27

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P	Present	Past	P.P
fix يصلح	fixed	fixed	choose يختار	chose	chosen
test يختبر	tested	tested	teach يعلم	taught	taught
heat up يسخن	heated up	heated up	give يعطي	gave	given
pack يحزم الحقائب	packed	packed	swim يسبح	swam	swum
check يتحقق	checked	checked	sleep ينام	slept	slept
float يطفو	floated	floated	wear يرتدي	wore	worn
store يخزن	stored	stored	keep يحتفظ	kept	kept

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

That's so cool!	هذا رائع جداً!	at university	في الجامعة
training course	دورة تدريبية	do experiments	يجري تجارب
give first aid	تقوم بعمل إسعافات أولية	in case	في حالة
get sick	يمرض	at mealtimes	في أوقات تناول الطعام
keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته البدنية	a special area	منطقة خاصة
traveling into space	السفر للفضاء		
do a two-year astronaut course	يعمل دورة تدريبية لمدة عامين ليصبح رائد فضاء		

Study the following

1. To become an astronaut, you need to study science first.
لكي تصبح رائد فضاء، عليك أن تدرس العلوم أولاً.
2. In the training course, you learn first aid. تتعلم في الدورة التدريبية الإسعافات الأولية
3. The sleeping bags are attached to the wall. أكياس النوم معلقة على الحائط
4. On the spaceship, there isn't a shower. على متن سفينة الفضاء، لا يوجد دش

Listen and read.

It's an astronaut's life

Would you like to be an astronaut? It's a great career, but you need to work very hard. First of all, you should study science at school and university. After this, you need to do a difficult, two-year astronaut **course**. If you are chosen to join the next space trip, you are very lucky!

هل ترغب في أن تكون رائد فضاء؟ إنها مهنة رائعة، لكن عليك أن تعمل بجد. في البداية، يجب عليك دراسة العلوم في المدرسة والجامعة. بعد ذلك، عليك أن تأخذ دورة صعبة لمدة عامين لرواد الفضاء. إذا تم اختيارك للانضمام إلى رحلة الفضاء القادمة، فأنت محظوظ جداً!

In the training course, a new astronaut is taught many things by their teachers. They are taught how to fix a spaceship, and how to do experiments. The students are shown how to give first aid, too, in case someone becomes sick in space.

في الدورة التدريبية، يتعلم رائد الفضاء الجديد أشياء كثيرة على يد معلميه. يتم تعليمهم كيفية إصلاح سفينة فضاء، وكيفية إجراء التجارب. ويوضح للطلاب كيفية تقديم الإسعافات الأولية أيضاً في حالة مرض شخص ما في الفضاء.

Astronauts need to be physically strong. They are regularly tested by doctors for their fitness. They are also usually asked to swim three lengths in their **spacesuits** in a swimming pool. Often, they are asked to go into a **model spaceship**. There, they are checked to see if they will be well in the spaceship. If they get sick, they cannot make the trip.

[illegible]

When the astronauts are on their **mission**, their things are stored safely on the spaceship while they are still on Earth. Their sleeping bags are **attached** to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep. This is because there's less gravity than on Earth. Food is put in drawers so it doesn't move around, too. See how the fruit is floating in the photo of the spaceship! At mealtimes, the food is heated up by the astronauts. The astronauts then eat from special bags, not from plates. This stops the food from floating away.

[illegible] الفضاء في أكياس خاصة، وليس في أطباق. وهذا يمنع الطعام من الطفو بعيدًا.

On the spaceship, it's important to keep everything clean. The team can't use cleaning liquids for cleaning as there's less gravity, so they use **cleaning wipes**. There's no shower or bath in the spaceship, so astronauts wash themselves with cleaning wipes, too. The astronauts sometimes wear the same clothes for a long time in the spaceship. Often, dirty clothes are then thrown away.

[illegible]

The team needs to keep fit in space, so their bodies don't become weak. To do this, they run in a special area of the spaceship. Did you know that one astronaut, Sunita Williams, ran the Boston **Marathon** while she was in space in 2007? That's so cool!



An astronaut trying to eat fruit in space

يحتاج الفريق إلى الحفاظ على لياقته في الفضاء، حتى لا تضعف أجسادهم. لفعل ذلك، يركضون في منطقة خاصة من سفينة الفضاء. هل تعلم أن رائدة الفضاء سونيتا ويليامز شاركت في ماراثون بوسطن أثناء وجودها في الفضاء عام ٢٠٠٧؟ هذا رائع جداً!

So, what do you think? Would you like an astronaut's life? Are you tidy and organized? Is your suitcase packed for space? I think we can all see that traveling into space would be an amazing experience, but is it for you?

فما رأيك؟ هل ترغب في حياة رائد الفضاء؟ هل أنت مرتب ومنظم؟ هل حقيبتك معدة للفضاء؟ أعتقد أننا جميعاً نستطيع أن نرى أن السفر إلى الفضاء سيكون تجربة مذهلة، ولكن هل هو مناسب لك؟



Present Simple Passive

المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط

Active — المبني للمعلوم

In active sentences, we focus on the **doer** of the action (the person doing the action).

في جملة المبني للمعلوم، نركز على فاعل الحدث

e.g. **We** study science at school and university.

Passive — المبني للمجهول

In passive sentences, we focus on the **object** (the person/thing receiving the action).

في جملة المبني للمجهول، نركز على المفعول به (سواء كان شخصاً أو شيئاً)

e.g. **Astronauts** are asked to swim three lengths in their spacesuits.

The doer can be included in the sentence, using by, or it can be left out.

يمكن أن نستخدم الفاعل في نهاية الجملة مع كلمة by أو يمكن حذفه.

e.g. The **food** is heated up (by the astronauts).

e.g. **Astronauts' bags** are stored on the spaceship.

Help your child learn the present simple passive.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط.

Lesson (5)

Active	Passive صيغة المبني للمجهول
I - We - You - They - اسم جمع + inf. He - She - It - اسم مفرد + (v + s, es, ies) e.g. We study science at school. e.g. She eats apples every week.	Object (مفعول) + am / is / are + P.P. e.g. Science is studied at school. e.g. Apples are eaten every week.
I - We - You - They - اسم جمع + don't + inf. He - She - It - اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf. e.g. I don't study French. e.g. Ali doesn't eat oranges.	Object (مفعول) + am / is / are + not + P.P. e.g. French isn't studied by him. e.g. Oranges aren't eaten by Ali.
Do + (I - we - you - they) + inf. ...? Does + (he - she - it) + inf. ...? e.g. Do you watch TV? e.g. Does Mona read the books?	Am / Is / Are + Object (مفعول) + P.P. ? e.g. Is TV watched by you? e.g. Are the books read by Mona?
Q.W + do + (I - we - you - they) + inf. ..? Q.W + does + (he - she - it) + inf. ...? e.g. Where do you buy meat? e.g. How does she make clothes?	Q.W + am / is / are + Object (مفعول) + P.P. ? e.g. Where is meat bought by you? e.g. How are clothes made by her?



Practice

31

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. New astronauts .... many things by their teachers.
   a) teaches b) taught c) are taught d) is teaching
2. If you .... to join the next space trip, you are very lucky.
   a) have chosen b) are chosen c) choose d) chose

3. You .... how to give first aid.
   a) **are shown** b) **shows** c) **has shown** d) **is shown**
4. Astronauts .... by doctors for their fitness.
   a) **will test** b) **test** c) **are testing** d) **are tested**
5. Astronauts .... to swim three lengths in their spacesuits in a swimming pool.
   a) **ask** b) **are asking** c) **asks** d) **are asked**
6. Astronauts .... to see if they will be well in the spaceship.
   a) **are checked** b) **is checked** c) **was checked** d) **are checking**
7. Astronauts' things .... safely on the spaceship while they are still on Earth.
   a) **is stored** b) **was stored** c) **are stored** d) **store**
8. Their sleeping bags .... to a wall, so they don't float around.
   a) **is attaching** b) **are attaching** c) **will attach** d) **are attached**
9. Food .... in drawers, so it doesn't move around.
   a) **is put** b) **are put** c) **will put** d) **puts**
10. At mealtimes, the food .... by the astronauts.
   a) **is heating** b) **is heated** c) **heats** d) **has heated**

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Farmers .... (are grown) cotton in Egypt.
2. Often, dirty clothes .... (throw) away.
3. Is your suitcase .... (packing) for space?
4. Fruit is .... (eat) by astronauts.
5. The lessons .... (don't) studied by the lazy students.
6. The spaceship .... (clean) by astronauts.

Help your child deal with such questions
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Would you like to be a/an ______________________ ?
   a) doctor   b) teacher   c) engineer   d) astronaut
2. You should study ______________________ at school and university.
   a) history   b) geography   c) science   d) math
3. You need to do a difficult, ______________ -year astronaut course.
   a) two   b) three   c) four   d) five
4. If you are chosen to join the next space trip, you are very __________ .
   a) unlucky   b) lucky   c) tired   d) sick

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ship - trip - spacesuits - fitness - spaceship

Astronauts need to be physically strong. They are regularly tested by doctors for their 1) __________ . They are also usually asked to swim three lengths in their 2) __________ in a swimming pool. Often, they are asked to go into a model 3) __________ . There, they are checked to see if they will be well in the spaceship. If they get sick, they cannot make the 4) __________ .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The astronauts ______________________ by their teachers.
   a) are teaching   b) teaches   c) teach   d) are taught

33

We ______________________ science at school and university.
   a) study   b) studies   c) are studied   d) has studied

3. The food ______________________ up by the astronauts.
   a) heat   b) heats   c) is heated   d) has heated
4. How is the spaceship ______________________ ?
   a) cleaned   b) cleaning   c) cleans   d) clean

5. The apples ______ eaten by me.
   a) **doesn't** b) **isn't** c) **aren't** d) **don't**
6. Cotton ______ by a lot of farmers.
   a) **grows** b) **is grown** c) **are grown** d) **is growing**

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

When the astronauts are on their mission, their things are stored safely on the spaceship while they are still on Earth. Their sleeping bags are attached to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep. This is because there's less gravity than on Earth. Food is put in drawers so it doesn't move around, too. At mealtimes, the food is heated up by the astronauts. The astronauts then eat from special bags, not from plates. This stops the food from floating away.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "their" refers to the ______.
   a) **astronauts** b) **missions** c) **bags** d) **drawers**
2. The astronauts' sleeping bags are attached to a ______.
   a) **drawer** b) **wall** c) **photo** d) **bag**
3. In space, there is less ______ than on Earth.
   a) **ground** b) **power** c) **energy** d) **gravity**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When is the food heated by the astronauts? ______
5. Why do the astronauts eat from special bags, not from plates? ______

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. attached to - bags - The sleeping - are - a wall - .

______

2. an astronaut - Would - you - be - to - like - ?

______

3. space - fit - The team - needs - to keep - in - .

______

34



WRITING: A BIOGRAPHY

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

biography	سيرة ذاتية	base camp	المعسكر الرئيسي
avalanche	انهيار جليدي	ambitious	شخص طموح

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

young woman	شابة	mountain	جبل
Australian	أسترالي	finally	في النهاية
adventure	مغامرة	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
adventurer	شخص مغامر	rest	يرتاح
problems	مشاكل	earthquake	زلزال
trips	رحلات	sadly	من المؤسف
top	قمة	equipment	معدات

Definitions تعريفات

avalanche	when a lot of snow falls down a mountain	انهيار جليدي
ambitious	wanting to be successful	طموح
base camp	a place where people climbing a mountain can rest	المعسكر الرئيسي

35

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
cross	يعبر	crossed	crossed
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
continue	يستمر	continued	continued

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
take	يأخذ	took	taken
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
make	يصنع / يعمل	made	made
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

mountaineering guide	مرشد لتسلق الجبال	at the age of	في عمر
The Kokoda Track	طريق كوكودا	Papua New Guinea	دولة بابوا غينيا الجديدة
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كليمنجارو	get to	يصل إلى
achieve her dream	يحقق حلمها	Mount Everest	قمة إيفرست

Seqnencing words and phrases عبارات وكلمات تفيد تسلسل الأحداث

First of all	أولا	Next	ثم
After that	بعد ذلك	Finally	في النهاية



Writing a biography

When you write a biography, you should: عندما تكتب سيرة ذاتية عن شخص ما، ينبغي أن

1. Find facts about the person. تبحث حقائق عن الشخص
2. Write a short first paragraph to introduce why the person is famous.
تكتب أول فقرة قصيرة تذكر فيها لماذا هذا الشخص مشهور.
3. Write key events in chronological (time) order. Use sequencing words.
تكتب الأحداث الرئيسية في ترتيب زمني وتستخدم الكلمات الدالة على تسلسل الأحداث
4. Write in the past simple tense because you are describing things which have already happened. تكتب في زمن الماضي البسيط لأنك تصف أشياء حدثت بالفعل.

Help your child identify these words
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Lesson (6)

Listen and read.

Alyssa Azar: A biography

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most **ambitious** adventurers. She's the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest.

أليسا آزار شابة مدهشة، وواحدة من أكثر المغامرات الأستراليات طموحًا. إنها أصغر أسترالية تتسلق جبل إفرست

Alyssa is from Toowoomba, Australia. She loved sports as a child. Her dad was a mountaineering guide, so he often took her on trips with him. First of all, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro when she was 14. After that, she decided to climb Mount Everest, and her parents helped her.

أليسا من توومبا، أستراليا. كانت تحب الرياضة عندما كانت طفلة. كان والدها مرشدًا لتسلق الجبال، لذلك كان يصطحبها معه في كثير من الأحيان في رحلات. أولاً، في سن الثامنة، عبرت مسار كوكودا في بابوا غينيا الجديدة. بعد ذلك، تسلقت جبل كليمنجارو عندما كانت في الرابعة عشرة من عمرها. وبعد ذلك، قررت تسلق جبل إيفرست، وساعدها والداها.

Alyssa trained hard, then she bought the correct equipment for climbing Everest. However, it was not very easy to climb the world's highest mountain. In 2014, and again in 2015, she got to the **base camp** at Everest. Unfortunately, there were problems. In 2014, there was an **avalanche**, and in 2015, there was an earthquake. Sadly, she couldn't continue to the top.

تدربت أليسا بجد، ثم اشترت المعدات المناسبة لتسلق جبل إيفرست. ومع ذلك، لم يكن من السهل جدًا تسلق أعلى جبل في العالم. في عام ٢٠١٤، ومرة أخرى في عام ٢٠١٥، وصلت إلى المعسكر الرئيسي في جبل إيفرست. لسوء الحظ، كانت هناك مشاكل. في عام ٢٠١٤، حدث انهيار جليدي، وفي عام ٢٠١٥، حدث زلزال. ومن المؤسف أنها لم تتمكن من الاستمرار إلى القمة.

Finally, in 2016, Alyssa made it to the top of Everest. She was 19 years old. Alyssa has written a book about her adventures, called *The Girl Who Climbed Everest*. In the book, she describes the hard work that helped her achieve her dream.

وأخيرًا، في عام ٢٠١٦، وصلت أليسا إلى قمة إيفرست. كانت تبلغ من العمر ١٩ عامًا. كتبت أليسا كتابًا عن مغامراتها بعنوان "الفتاة التي تسلقت جبل إيفرست". تصف في الكتاب العمل الجاد الذي ساعدها في تحقيق حلمها.



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Alyssa Azar is an amazing .... woman.
   a) old b) young c) sad d) tidy
2. She is one of Australia's most ambitious ....
   a) footballers b) swimmers c) adventurers d) artists
3. She is from ....
   a) England b) France c) America d) Australia
4. She loved ....
   a) sports b) science c) arts d) birds

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

climb - Everest - play - Where - mountains

Salma : Hi Huda. Do you know Alyssa Azar?
Huda : Hi Salma. Yes. I do.
Salma : 1) .... is she from?
Huda : She's from Australia.
Salma : What's her favorite hobby?
Huda : Her favorite hobby is climbing 2) ....
Salma : What mountains did she 3) .... ?
Huda : She climbed Mount Kilimanjaro and Mount 4) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Alyssa was a very .... adventurer. She wants to be successful.
   a) tired b) ambitious c) lazy d) noisy
2. Alyssa .... Mount Kilimanjaro at the age of 14.
   a) carved b) crossed c) climbed d) decided

3. Alyssa ______________________ hard to climb Mount Everest.
   a) **bought** b) **decided** c) **trained** d) **made**
4. In 2015, she ______________________ to the base camp.
   a) **reached** b) **arrived** c) **made** d) **got**
5. A/An ______________ is when a lot of snow falls down a mountain.
   a) **avalanche** b) **earthquake** c) **flood** d) **drought**
6. Alyssa wrote a book about the hard work that helped her _ her dream.
   a) **achieve** b) **kill** c) **cross** d) **climb**

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Alyssa is from Toowoomba, Australia. She loved sports as a child. Her dad was a mountaineering guide, so he often took her on trips with him. First of all, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro when she was 14. After that, she decided to climb Mount Everest, and her parents helped her. Finally, in 2016, she climbed Mount Everest. She wrote a book about her adventures.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "Her" refers to ______________.
   a) **Alyssa** b) **Toowoomba** c) **trip** d) **track**
2. Alyssa's dad was a mountaineering ______________.
   a) **doctor** b) **guide** c) **engineer** d) **artist**
3. At the age of ______________, she crossed the Kokoda Track.
   a) **six** b) **seven** c) **eight** d) **nine**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When did Alyssa climb Mount Kilimanjaro? ______________
5. What did Alyssa do in 2016? ______________

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A biography about Alyssa Azar

Guiding elements:

(Australia - ambitious - sports - climbed - a book)



Lesson (7)

STORY: THE TRAVELERS AND THE WOLF

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

branch	غصن	realize	يدرك - يفهم
chat	يدردش	coo	يهدل (صوت الحمام)
crack	شق - كسر	sunrise	شروق الشمس
pretend	يتظاهر	whisper	يهمس

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

deer	غزال	village	قرية	leaves	أوراق الشجر
pigeons	حمام	market	سوق	nearby	قريب
palm tree	نخلة	through	خلال	special	خاص
suddenly	فجأة	nose	أنف	dead	ميت
daughter	ابنة	backpacks	حقائب ظهر	scared	خائف
oasis	واحة	wolf	ذئب	noise	ضوضاء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
reply	يرد	replied	replied
touch	يلمس	touched	touched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
grow up	يكبر	grew up	grown up
leave	يترك - يغادر	left	left
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
find	يجد	found	found
read	يقرأ	read	read
come	يأتي	came	come
run away	يهرب	ran away	run away

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (7)

Important expressions and prepositions

the desert road		on their backs	
seem very happy		after a while	
in danger	في خطر	a bit hard	صعب قليلاً
a beautiful scene		How nice it is!	
a lovely place	مكان رائع	on his own	بمفرده
too hot to walk			

Listen and read.

Three men, Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan, lived in a village. They were very good friends, and they grew up together. They studied at the same school and now worked near each other. One day, the friends decided to go to the market in the nearby town. "What time should we leave tomorrow?" asked Amin.

"I think we should leave before sunrise so it's not too hot to walk," said Ashraf. "I agree," said Sultan.

قال سلطان: "أنا موافق".

The men got up at 5:30 the next day, and walked together through the desert road. They carried backpacks on their backs with water and snacks. The men enjoyed **chatting** about their lives and their families.

الماء والوجبات الخفيفة. استمتع الرجال بالدردشة حول حياتهم وعائلاتهم.

"So, is your daughter, Noura, enjoying school?" asked Amin.

سأل أمين "هل تستمتع ابنتك نورا بالمدرسة؟".

"Well, she seems very happy, and she likes her teacher and her friends," replied Ashraf. "But she's finding reading difficult. I think I need to help her more."

"Yes, sometimes learning is a bit hard at first," said Sultan, "I'm sure she'll achieve great things."

After a while, they came to an oasis, and saw a beautiful deer with big eyes. When they got closer, the deer ran away, and there was a noise in the leaves. They saw that the deer was back with her baby. It was a beautiful scene. The men then looked up and saw pigeons in the palm trees. The pigeons cooed at each other. "How nice it is to see all these special things with my best friends!" said Amin.

وبعد فترة، وصلوا إلى واحة، ورأوا غزالاً جميلاً له عيون كبيرة. وعندما اقتربوا، هرب الغزال، وكان هناك ضجيج في أوراق الشجر. ورأوا أنه عادت مع صغيرها. لقد كان مشهداً جميلاً. ثم نظر الرجال إلى أعلى ورأوا الحمام في أشجار النخيل. كان الحمام يهدل على بعضهم البعض. قال امين "كم هو جميل أن أرى كل هذه الأشياء المميزة مع اعز أصدقائي!".

"Yes, this is a lovely place!" added Ashraf.

وأضاف أشرف "نعم، هذا مكان جميل!".

Suddenly, there was a **crack** of a **branch**. Sultan looked behind him, and then started to run back towards the village. Ashraf climbed a tree, but Amin didn't move. He **realized** he was on his own. Amin slowly turned around and saw what his friends had seen – a black wolf. He immediately fell to the ground and **pretended** to be dead. Amin didn't move. The wolf came up to him and touched his face with his nose. It whispered something in his ear, then walked back into the desert.

فجأة، كان هناك صدع في فرع شجرة. نظر سلطان خلفه، ثم بدأ بالركض عائداً نحو القرية. تسلق أشرف شجرة، لكن أمين لم يتحرك. لقد أدرك أنه كان بمفرده. استدار أمين ببطء ورأى ما شاهده أصدقاؤه - ذئباً أسود. سقط على الفور على الأرض وتظاهر بأنه ميت. ولم يتحرك أمين. اقترب منه الذئب ولمس وجهه بأنفه. وهمس بشيء في أذنه، ثم عاد إلى الصحراء.

Sultan came back, with two men from the village. "Are you OK?" Sultan asked.

عاد سلطان برفقة رجلين من القرية. وسأله "هل أنت بخير؟".

Ashraf came down from the tree. "What did the wolf whisper to you?" he asked.

نزل أشرف من الشجرة. و سأل "ماذا همس لك الذئب؟".

Amin looked sad and said, "Never travel with friends who leave you when you're in danger." You, Sultan, ran back to the village to get help. Thank you. You, Ashraf, climbed the tree so the wolf would eat me, and not you!"

بدا أمين حزيناً وقال: "لا تسافر أبداً مع الأصدقاء الذين يتركونك عندما تكون في خطر." لقد ركضت أنت يا سلطان إلى القرية للحصول على المساعدة. شكرًا لك. أنت يا أشرف تسلقت الشجرة حتى يأكلني الذئب وليس أنت!

"I'm sorry, Amin," said Ashraf, feeling bad. "I was so scared. I want to be a better friend from now on."

قال أشرف وهو يشعر بالسوء: "أنا آسف يا أمين. كنت خائفاً جداً. أريد أن أصبح صديقاً أفضل من الآن فصاعداً."

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The men got up at ....
   a) 2:30 b) 3:30 c) 4:30 d) 5:30
2. The men walked together through the .... road.
   a) club b) desert c) forest d) farm
3. They carried .... on their backs.
   a) water b) backpacks c) bags d) boxes
4. The men enjoyed .... about their lives and their families.
   a) reading b) writing c) chatting d) listening

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

dead - sunrise - grew up - village - market

Three men, Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan, lived in a 1) .... They were very good friends, and they 2) .... together. They studied at the same school and now worked near each other. The friends decided to go to the 3) .... in the nearby town. They thought they should leave before 4).................. so it's not too hot to walk.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They always get up before the .... in the morning.
   a) sunrise b) sunbath c) sunset d) sunburn
2. I always enjoy .... with my friends online.
   a) reading b) chatting c) running d) walking
3. After a .... , the friends came to an oasis.
   a) where b) when c) while d) white

4. Some birds are standing on the ______________ of the tree.

a) **lunch** b) **brunch** c) **beaches** d) **branches**

5. He fell to the ground and ______________ to be dead.

a) **agreed** b) **pretended** c) **replied** d) **touched**

6. The wolf came to Amin and ______________ his face with his nose.

a) **touched** b) **killed** c) **barked** d) **spoke**

7. The pigeons ______________ at each other.

a) **cooked** b) **cooed** c) **barked** d) **left**

8. The wolf ______________ to Amin so his friends didn't hear it.

a) **talked** b) **chatted** c) **whispered** d) **cried**

9. The ______________ is a very beautiful animal.

a) **deer** b) **dare** c) **dear** d) **dairy**

10. Amin ______________ that he was on his own in the oasis.

a) **decided** b) **fell** c) **realized** d) **left**

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. village - in - The three - lived - men - the same - .

____

2. sunrise - They - decided - to leave - before - early - .

____

3. with - like - Who - would - you - to travel - ?

____

4. to be dead - and - Amin - to the ground - pretended - fell - .

____

5. other - cooed - The - pigeons - at - each - .

____

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Writing Corner

Ahmed Ibn Majid

Ahmed Ibn Majid is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. He was the first Arab seaman. He was born in 1432 in what is now Oman. As a child, he was fascinated by the sea. He wanted to explore the seas and oceans. He was a very intelligent man and studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and astronomy. He became known as a master navigator.

Omar Hegazy

At the age of 25, Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to hospital, where the doctors removed part of his leg. Then, Omar heard about two disabled athletes, and he wanted to be like them. He started training hard and working on his fitness. Amazingly, he broke a world record in holding his breath underwater. Now, Omar motivates people all around the world.

Alyssa Azar: A biography

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most ambitious adventurers. She's the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest. Alyssa is from Australia. She loved sports as a child. First of all, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro when she was 14. After that, she decided to climb Mount Everest, and her parents helped her. Finally, in 2016, Alyssa made it to the top of Everest.

Review on Unit (5)

Vocabulary

astronomy	علم الفلك	fascinated by	مبهور بـ	peninsula	شبه جزيرة
navigate	يبحر	navigator	ملاح بحار	sailors	بحارة
canoe	قارب - زورق	tent	خيمة	cooker	بوتجاز
banker	موظف بنك	motorbike	دراجة نارية	inspire	يلهم
hold his breath	يحبس أنفاسه	crutch	عكاز	fins	زعانف
model spaceship	مجسم سفينة فضاء	spacesuit	بدلة فضاء	course	منهج - أساس - دورة
cleaning wipes	مناديل مبللة معقمة	mission	مهمة	attached to	مرتبط بـ - متعلق بـ
marathon	ماراثون (سباق)	astronaut	رائد فضاء	base camp	مخيم رئيسي
ambitious	طموح	biography	سيرة ذاتية	avalanche	انهيار جليدي
branch	غصن - فرع	crack	صدع - كسر	realize	يدرك
sunrise	شروق الشمس	whisper	يهمس	pretend	يتظاهر

Language

Phrasal verbs

A **phrasal verb** is a verb that is followed by a preposition.

الفعل المركب: هو فعل يتبع بحرف جر وحرف الجر يغير معنى الفعل.

fill in	يكمل - يملأ (استمارة)	wake up	يستيقظ	pick up	يلتقط
see off	يودع	figure out	يكتشف	put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه
drop off	يوصل شخص لمكان	look up	يبحث عن - يكتشف		

Present Simple Passive

Affirmative إثبات — **Object** (مفعول) **+ am / is / are + P.P.**

e.g. TV is watched by me.

Negative نفي — **Object** (مفعول) **+ am / is / are + not + P.P**

e.g. Tennis isn't played by me.

Question سؤال — **Am / Is / Are + object** (مفعول) **+ P.P ..?**

e.g. Are clothes bought by you?

Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

Lesson (2)

Lesson (3)

Lesson (4)

Lesson (5)

Lesson (6)

Lesson (7)

يدرك .... يهدل (صوت الحمام)

يتظاهر .... غزال

... يهمس ...

Activities on Unit (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. After a while, the friends came to a/an ....
   a) oasis b) club c) bank d) park
2. They saw a beautiful .... with big eyes.
   a) pigeon b) deer c) wolf d) rabbit
3. There was a noise in the ....
   a) house b) street c) leaves d) hotel
4. It was a .... scene.
   a) quiet b) noisy c) bad d) beautiful

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

trains - clothes - cleaning wipes - liquids - spaceship

On the spaceship, it's important to keep everything clean. The team can't use cleaning 1) .... for cleaning as there's less gravity, so they use 2) .... There's no shower or bath in the 3) .... so astronauts wash themselves with cleaning wipes, too. The astronauts sometimes wear the same 4) .... for a long time in the spaceship.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Three men, Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan, lived in a village. They were very good friends. One day, the friends decided to go to the market in the nearby town. The men got up at 5:30 the next day, and walked together through the desert road. They carried backpacks on their backs with water and snacks. After a while, they came to an oasis, and saw a beautiful deer with big eyes. They got closer, the deer ran away. Suddenly they lost their way and everyone was on his own. Amin slowly turned around and saw a black wolf. He defended himself with a long stick. The wolf ran away. His friends came back together again. They decided not to go into the desert again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The three men lived in a ....
   a) village b) town c) city d) hotel
2. They got up at .... the next day.
   a) thirty five b) fifty six c) five thirty d) four thirty
3. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to the ....
   a) towns b) friends c) deer d) oases

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did the friends decide to go? ....
5. How did Amin defend himself? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are bad friends. (..........)
2. The friends like to chat about their school days together. (..........)
3. They became friends 15 years ago, at prep school. (..........)
4. They produce an English-language newspaper together. (..........)

B) Read and answer the questions.

5. Who was the editor? ....
6. Why does the PE teacher think it's good to have Tarek on the school newspaper? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... in the form to tell the staff about my disability.
   a) filled b) felt c) fell d) fit
2. My mom .... me up early yesterday.
   a) looked b) woke c) saw d) figured
3. Mom saw me .... at the airport last week.
   a) on b) in c) off d) of
4. If you .... to join the next space trip, you're very lucky.
   a) chooses b) chosen c) are chosen d) has chosen
5. The astronauts .... by the doctors regularly for their fitness.
   a) test b) are tested c) will test d) are testing
6. Astronauts .... to be physically fit.
   a) need b) needs c) is needing d) has needed

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the spaceship - no - There's - shower - on - .
....
2. the sea - We - safely - can - travel - on - .
....
3. Everest - equipment - Alyssa - the correct - bought - for climbing - .
....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A trip to Luxor

Guiding elements:

(Last year - by train - the Valley of the Kings - the temples)

Unit 6

Breaking news!



Enjoying reading the news together

In this unit, the students will ...

- understand specific details in a news report.
- listen, read, and write about the job of a journalist.
- understand and use the present and past simple passive.
- understand and use phrases for reacting to personal news.
- understand the relationship between a series of events.
- understand and use the future simple passive.
- write a simple newspaper report.
- make logical inferences.

Lesson (1) OUR SCHOOL NEWSPAPER

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

garage sale	معرض للأشياء المستعملة	volunteer	متطوع
equipment	معدات	hutch	قفص "أرنب"
responsible	مسئول	check on	يفحص - يطمئن على
vaccinations	تطعيمات - أمصال	newspaper	جريدة
editor	محرر	journalist	صحفي

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

items	أشياء	difficult	صعب	money	مال / نقود
vet	طبيب بيطري	shape	شكل	lettuce	خس
pet	حيوان أليف	rabbit	أرنب	special	مميز
articles	مقالات	once	مرة	twice	مرتين

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
collect	يجمع	collected	collected
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant	meant
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
give	يُعطي	gave	given
teach	يُعلم	taught	taught
get	يحصل على	got	got
find	يجد	found	found
know	يعرف	knew	known

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

health care	رعاية صحية	look after		
care for	يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ	is married to		
take turns with	يتناوب مع	make sure		
are sold to	تُباع لـ	on time		الوقت المحدد
get better	يتحسن	do calculations		العمليات الحسابية



Definitions

volunteer	someone who works for free	
equipment	tools or things you need to do something	
newspaper	a printed paper that gives you news	
editor	the person who chooses the news stories	
hutch	a small house for a rabbit	"أرنب"
responsible	being someone others can rely on	
vaccination	a medicine that protects a person or animal from a disease	
check on	to make sure that someone is doing well	يطمئن على



Read the articles

Our School Newspaper

Making a garage sale



Every year we have a **garage sale** at our school. This means **volunteers** from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen **equipment**. These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. These items are sold to anyone who would like to buy them. The money we collect is used to help children who need health care in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children with our teachers. Everyone is really happy!

Noha

كل عام لدينا معرض لبيع الأشياء المستعملة في مدرستنا. وهذا يعني أن المتطوعين من مدرستنا يقومون جميعًا بإحضار أشياء قديمة مثل الملابس أو الكتب أو الألعاب أو معدات المطبخ. هذه الأشياء قديمة، لكنها لا تزال في حالة جيدة ويمكن استخدامها مرة أخرى. تُباع هذه الأشياء لأي شخص يرغب في شرائها. تُستخدم الأموال التي نجمعها لمساعدة الأطفال الذين يحتاجون إلى رعاية صحية في المستشفيات. نقوم أيضًا بشراء بعض الألعاب الجديدة ونأخذها إلى الأطفال مع معلمينا. الجميع سعداء حقًا!

Looking after the class pet



My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a **hutch** in the school garden. We take turns with the rest of the class to look after him. We clean his hutch and give him new food and water. He loves carrots and lettuce! My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets and be **responsible**. Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet. He comes in once a week to **check on** Crunchy, and to make sure he gets all his **vaccinations** on time.

Rana

فصلي لديه أرنب. انه يسمى كرانشي. يعيش في منزل صغير يسمى القفص في حديقة المدرسة. ونتناوب مع بقية الفصل في الاعتناء به. نقوم بتنظيف كوخه ونقدم له الطعام والماء الجديد. يحب الجزر والخس! يحب فصلي الاعتناء به، وهذا يعلمنا كيفية رعاية الحيوانات الأليفة وتحمل المسؤولية. معلمة العلوم لدينا، الأستاذة دعاء، متزوجة من طبيب بيطري. يأتي مرة واحدة في الأسبوع للاطمئنان على كرانشي، وللتأكد من حصوله على جميع التطعيمات في الوقت المحدد.

Helping younger children



My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of the children in Grades 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math. So, twice a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do calculations. The children also love our school **newspaper** because there are articles about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists, too! I read with a boy called Seleem. Seleem is getting better at reading and writing now. He wrote an article about our school football team. We sent it to the **editor** of the school newspaper. The editor thought the story was great, and Seleem saw his article in the newspaper the next week. That was very special for us!

Hassan

يحب فصلي مساعدة الأطفال الصغار في مدرستنا. يجد بعض الأطفال في الصفين الثالث والرابع صعوبة في القراءة أو الكتابة أو حل مسائل الرياضيات. لذلك، نذهب مرتين في الأسبوع إلى فصولهم الدراسية. نجلس معهم ونستمع إليهم وهم يقرأون القصص ونساعدهم في القيام بالعمليات الحسابية. يحب الأطفال أيضا صحيفة مدرستنا لأنها تحتوي على مقالات عن الأشخاص اللذين يعرفونهم في المدرسة. وهم يعرفون أحيانًا الصحفيين أيضا! قرأت مع صبي يدعى سليم. سليم يتحسن في القراءة والكتابة الآن. لقد كتب مقالاً عن فريق كرة القدم في مدرستنا. أرسلناها إلى رئيس تحرير جريدة المدرسة. رأى المحرر أن القصة كانت رائعة، ورأى سليم مقالته في الصحيفة في الأسبوع التالي. كان ذلك مميزًا جدًا بالنسبة لنا!

Help your child read articles.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المقالات.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Every year we have a .... sale at our school.
   a) garage b) garden c) library d) class
2. .... from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys or kitchen equipment.
   a) Teachers b) Volunteers c) Doctors d) Vets
3. These items are old, but they still in good ....
   a) color b) size c) shape d) mood
4. The .... we collect is used to help children who need health care.
   a) food b) water c) clothes d) money

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

check on - responsible - once - hutch - vaccinations

My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a 1)...................... in the school garden. We take turns with the rest of the class to look after him. We clean his hutch and give him new food and water. He loves carrots and lettuce! My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets and be 2)...................... Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet. He comes in once a week to 3)...................... Crunchy, and to make sure he gets all his 4)...................... on time.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A/An .... is someone who works for free.
   a) teacher b) volunteer c) vet d) engineer
2. My rabbit lives in a small ....
   a) hutch b) pot c) glass d) cup
3. The vet comes in once a week to check .... my rabbit.
   a) in b) at c) on d) for
4. My brother is .... I can rely on him.
   a) lazy b) shy c) responsible d) sick
5. All children were given two .... against measles (الحصبة).
   a) hats b) drinks c) vaccinations d) clothes



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of the children in Grades 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math. So, twice a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do calculations. The children also love our school newspaper because there are articles about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists, too! I read with a boy called Seleem. Seleem is getting better at reading and writing now. He wrote an article about our school football team. We sent it to the editor of the school newspaper. The editor thought the story was great, and Seleem saw his article in the newspaper the next week. That was very special for us!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "difficult" is ....
   a) easy b) bad c) hard d) tall
2. The best headline for the text is ....
   a) Helping younger children b) Looking after the class pet
   c) A garage sale d) Making a newspaper
3. Seleem wrote an article about our school .... team.
   a) basketball b) football c) tennis d) handball

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do the children love their school newspaper? ....
5. Who thought the story was great? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. sells - clothes - Noha - and - items - used - other - old - .

....

2. Mrs Rana, - is - to - a vet - married - Our teacher, - .

....

3. an - Hassan - to - article - newspaper - the school - sent - .

....



6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

An event at your school

Guiding elements:

(garage sale - school - help - special)

Key vocabulary
كلمات أساسية

cheetah	الفهد الصياد	India	دولة الهند	news	أخبار
giant panda	دب الباندا العملاقة	Indians	الهنود	bamboo	خيزران - البامبو

Extra vocabulary
كلمات إضافية

fast	سريع	until	حتى	enemies	أعداء
pleased	سعيد / مسرور	country	دولة	leopard	نمر
enough	كافٍ	important	هام	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
sadly	من المؤسف	habitat	موطن	conservation	حماية

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
return	يعود	returned	returned
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared
track	يتعقب	tracked	tracked
attack	يهاجم	attacked	attacked
design	يصمم	designed	designed
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
post	ينشر	posted	posted
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	destroyed
worry	يقلق	worried	worried
build	يبني	built	built
meet	يقابل	met	met
feed	يطعم	fed	fed

Important expressions and prepositions

safe area	منطقة آمنة	try very hard	نبذل قصارى جهدنا
get lost	يضل الطريق	all the time	طوال الوقت
put in danger	يتعرض للخطر	cut down for	يقطع من أجل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Animal News

The cheetahs are back!


One of the cheetahs in Kuno National Park

Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India – Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they **are fed** every day. They **aren't watched** all the time, but they **are tracked** so they don't get lost. Some people are a little worried. This is because when the cheetahs move around more, they will meet other big cats, for example, leopards, which could attack the cheetahs. Some people are asking, "**Is** the area **designed** to be safe enough?" It's so important that they **are protected**.

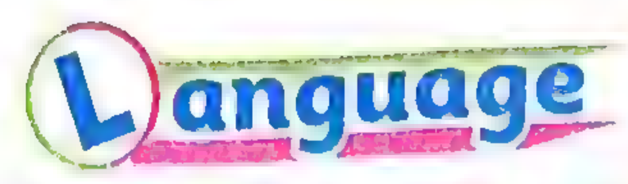
الفهود، أسرع الحيوانات في العالم، عادت إلى الهند. لقد عاشوا في الهند حتى الخمسينيات من القرن الماضي لكنهم اختفوا بعد ذلك ببطء. ومع ذلك، بعد ذلك بكثير، تم إحضار ثمانية منهم إلى محمية كبيرة في الهند - محمية كونو الوطنية. الشعب الهندي سعيد للغاية بعودة هذه الحيوانات إلى بلاده. تعيش الفهود الآن في منطقة آمنة، حيث يتم أطعامهم كل يوم. لا يتم مراقبتهم طوال الوقت، ولكن يتم تعقبهم حتى لا يضيعوا. بعض الناس يشعرون بالقلق قليلا. وذلك لأنه عندما تتحرك الفهود أكثر، فإنها ستقابل قططًا كبيرة أخرى، مثل النمور الصيادة، والتي يمكن أن تهاجم الفهود. يتساءل بعض الناس: "هل المنطقة مصممة لتكون آمنة بما فيه الكفاية؟" من المهم جدًا أن يتم حمايتهم.

More giant pandas!


A giant panda eating bamboo

Who doesn't love a giant panda? There are lots of videos of them on social media! **Were** any of the videos **posted** by you? Sadly, some years ago, giant pandas **were put** in danger. Much of their habitat **was destroyed** to build new homes. Their habitat **wasn't protected**. Pandas only eat bamboo, which **was cut** down for the houses. Many people were very worried, so the pandas **were put** into special areas, where they **were protected**. They **were given** as much bamboo as they could eat. This conservation work has been very successful. In the 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pandas. Now there are almost 2,000! This number shows us something important. When we try very hard, we can help animals live long, healthy lives.

من الذي لا يحب الباندا العملاقة؟ هناك الكثير من مقاطع الفيديو لهم على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي! هل قمت بنشر أي من مقاطع الفيديو؟ من المؤسف أنه منذ عدة سنوات، تعرضت حيوانات الباندا العملاقة للخطر. تم تدمير جزء كبير من موطنهم لبناء منازل جديدة. لم يكن موطنهم محميًا. تأكل الباندا فقط الخيزران، الذي تم قطعه من أجل المنازل. كان الكثير من الناس قلقين للغاية، لذلك تم وضع حيوانات الباندا في مناطق خاصة، حيث كانت محمية. لقد تم إعطاؤهم قدرًا كبيرًا من الخيزران بقدر ما يمكنهم تناوله. لقد كانت أعمال الحماية هذه ناجحة للغاية. وفي الثمانينيات، لم يكن هناك سوى حوالي ١٢٠٠ باندا عملاقة. الآن هناك ما يقرب من ٢٠٠٠! هذا الرقم يبين لنا شيئًا مهمًا. عندما نبذل قصارى جهدنا، يمكننا مساعدة الحيوانات على العيش حياة طويلة وصحية.



The Past Simple Passive

زمن الماضي البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use was / were + P.P (the past simple passive) when a past action is more important than who did it, or when we do not know (or it is not important) who did something.**

نستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط عندما يكون الحدث الماضي أكثر أهمية من الذي قام بالفعل أو عندما لا نعرف من قام بالفعل.

	Active صيغة المبني للمعلوم	Passive صيغة المبني للمجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	Subject (الفاعل) + (التصريف الثاني للفعل) e.g. Pandas ate the bamboo.	Object (مفعول) + was / were + P.P. e.g. Bamboo was eaten.
Negative النفي	Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل) e.g. They didn't feed the panda.	Object (مفعول) + was / were + not + P.P. e.g. The panda wasn't fed.
(Yes / No) question: السؤال بـ هل	Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)? e.g. Did Ali post the videos?	Was / Were + object (مفعول) + P.P...? e.g. Were the videos posted by Ali?
Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W أداة استفهام +did+ subject (الفاعل) + inf.? e.g. Where did people find the giant panda?	Q.W أداة استفهام + was / were + object (مفعول) +P.P..? e.g. Where was the giant panda found?

Help your child learn the past simple passive.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول.

Remember تذكر

The Present Simple Passive

Affirmative الإثبات

Object (مفعول) + (am / is / are) + P.P.

e.g. Giant pandas are protected.

Negative النفي

Object (مفعول) + (am / is / are) + not + P.P.

e.g. They aren't watched all the time.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question:

(Am / Is / Are) + object (مفعول) + P.P. ?

e.g. Is the area designed to be safe enough?

Wh-question:

Q.W + (am / is / are) + object (مفعول) + P.P. ?

e.g. Where are the cheetahs tracked?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Cheetahs .... tracked so they don't get lost.
   a) are b) is c) am d) was
2. The cheetahs are .... every day.
   a) feed b) feeds c) feeding d) fed
3. The bamboo was .... down for th panda to eat.
   a) cut b) cuts c) cutting d) was cut
4. Giant pandas habitat .... protected.
   a) aren't b) am not c) wasn't d) weren't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Is the area .... (design) to be safe enough?
2. Giant pandas were .... (puts) in danger.
3. Cheetahs .... (isn't) watched all the time.
4. Much of their habitat was .... (destroy) to build new homes.

General Activities

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

........................, the fastest animal in the world, have returned to India.
Cheetahs b) Pandas c) Wolves d) Lions

Cheetahs lived in .... until the 1950s.
Egypt b) China c) Japan d) India

Eight of them were brought to a big .... in India.
zoo b) park c) school d) garden

The Indian people are very .... to have these animals back in their country.
sad b) bad c) pleased d) slow

2 complete the text with the words from the box.

protected - people - designed - aren't - tracked

The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they are fed every day. They 1) .... watched all the time, but they are 2)........................ so they don't get lost. Some people are a little worried. This is because when the cheetahs move around more, they will meet other big cats, for example, leopards, which could attack the cheetahs. Some people are asking, "Is the area 3)........................ to be safe enough?" It's so important that they are 4)........................ .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

.... any of the videos posted by you?
Was b) Is c) Were d) Am

It's important that giant pandas are ....
protect b) protected c) protecting d) protects

The cheetahs aren't .... all the time.
watch b) watches c) watching d) watched

Giant pandas .... put into special areas.
was b) were c) is d) am

Eight cheetahs were .... to a big park in India.
bring b) brings c) bringing d) brought

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Who doesn't love a giant panda? There are lots of videos of them on social media! Were any of the videos posted by you? Sadly, some years ago, giant pandas were put in danger. Much of their habitat was destroyed to build new homes. Their habitat wasn't protected. Pandas only eat bamboo, which was cut down for the houses. Many people were very worried, so the pandas were put into special areas, where they were protected. They were given as much bamboo as they could eat. This conservation work has been very successful. In the 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pandas. Now there are almost 2,000! This number shows us something important. When we try very hard, we can help animals live long, healthy lives.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is generally about ....
   a) cheetahs b) giant pandas c) lions d) fish
2. The opposite of the underlined word "danger" is ....
   a) safety b) cold c) hard d) dangerous
3. Pandas only eat ....
   a) wheat b) corn c) carrots d) bamboo

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where were many pandas put into? ....
5. How many giant pandas were there in the 1980s? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - every - The cheetahs - day - fed - .
   ....
2. put - pandas - The giant - were - danger - in - .
   ....
3. was - The bamboo - cut down - to eat - for - the pandas - .
   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Cheetahs

Guiding elements:

(fastest - India - fed - tracked)

Lesson (3) WELL DONE!

Good news phrases عبارات خاصة بالأخبار الجيدة		Bad news phrases عبارات خاصة بالأخبار السيئة	
Oh, wow! That's great!	أوه، واو! هذا رائع!	Oh, no! That's too bad!	[illegible] لا! هذا سيء للغاية
That's amazing news!	هذه أخبار مدهشة!	Better luck next time	[illegible] أوفر المرة القادمة
I'm so pleased for you!	أنا مسرور جدًا لك!	What a pity!	[illegible] للأسف!
Well done!	أحسنت!	I'm sorry to hear that!	[illegible] حزين لسماع ذلك!

Read and role-play









Help your child read and role-play.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويمثل الأدوار.

Lesson (4) THE LIFE OF A JOURNALIST

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

international	عالمي - دولي	journalist	صحفي
journalism	الصحافة	staff	طاقم العمل - هيئة الموظفين
breaking news	أخبار عاجلة	sociable	شخص اجتماعي

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

language	لغة	quiet	هادئ	correct	صحيح - سليم
firstly	أولا	university	جامعة	story	خبر
secondly	ثانيا	spelling	الهجاء	different	مختلف
after that	بعد ذلك	quite	إلى حد ما	scripts	النصوص
location	الموقع	cameraman	مصور	soundman	مهندس نصوت
report	تقرير	subway	مترو الأنفاق	cab	سيارة أجرة
services	خدمات	midday	منتصف النهار	article	مقال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
study	يدرس	studied	studied
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
call	يتواصل - يتصل	called	called
describe	يصف	described	described
interview	يجري مقابلة - حوار	interviewed	interviewed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work for	يعمل لدى	decide to	يقرر أن
focus on	يركز على	come in	تأتي - تحدث
kinds of	أنواع من	get up	يستيقظ
write about	يكتب عن	from home	من المنزل
at home	في المنزل	on weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع

Definitions تعريفات

international	related to more than one country	عالمي - دولي
breaking news	new information about an event that is happening now	أخبار عاجلة
journalism	the study, or job, of writing articles for newspapers and magazines	الصحافة
sociable	describing a person who likes talking to, and being with, other people	شخص اجتماعي
staff	people who work at a place, for example, a hotel	هيئة الموظفين

Listen and read.


Sylvia, journalist

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an **international** journalist, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied **journalism** at university. I think a journalist needs to be good at two things. Firstly, they need to communicate well to get a good story. Secondly, they have to write well and quickly, using correct spelling and grammar.

مرحبًا، أنا سيلفيا! أنا صحفية دولية وأعيش في مصر. أنا أعمل في صحيفة إنجليزية. يسألني الناس أحيانًا لماذا أردت أن أصبح صحفية. أنا أحب اللغة الإنجليزية حقًا، لذلك قررت التركيز عليها في المدرسة. وبعد ذلك درست الصحافة في الجامعة. أعتقد أن الصحفي يجب أن يكون جيدًا في شيئين. أولاً، يحتاجون إلى التواصل جيدًا للحصول على خبر جيد. ثانيًا، عليهم الكتابة جيدًا وبسرعة، باستخدام الحروف الهجائية والقواعد الصحيحة.

I love my job. It's fun, and every day is different because we don't know what news will come in. There are many kinds of journalists. I'm a news journalist, so I write the **breaking news**, that is, the news as it starts to happen.

أنا أحب وظيفتي. إنه شيء ممتع، وكل يوم يختلف لأننا لا نعرف ما هي الأخبار التي ستأتي. هناك أنواع عديدة من الصحفيين. أنا صحفية أخبار، لذا أكتب الأخبار العاجلة، أي الأخبار فور حدوثها.

Every day, I get up early and have breakfast. Then I call my editor to see what stories I need to write about. I write my news reports from home, but I can get anywhere in the city if there's a story there. Luckily, we have an excellent subway and cab service here. I travel all over Egypt, and also internationally, when I need to. Last week, I was in India!

كل يوم أستيقظ مبكرًا وأتناول وجبة الإفطار. ثم أتصل برئيس التحرير الخاص بي لمعرفة الأخبار التي أحتاج إلى الكتابة عنها. أكتب تقاريري الإخبارية من المنزل، لكن يمكنني الذهاب إلى أي مكان في المدينة إذا كان هناك خبر. ولحسن الحظ، لدينا خدمة مترو أنفاق وسيارات أجرة ممتازة هنا. أسافر إلى جميع أنحاء مصر، وأيضًا إلى الخارج، عندما أحتاج إلى ذلك. الأسبوع الماضي كنت في الهند!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

All the news stories are sent to the editor by midday. Then I get some lunch, often with a friend. In the afternoon, I start researching stories and interviewing people, ready for the next day. Sometimes, if a news story is breaking, I need to work in the evening, and into the night, and sometimes even on weekends!

يتم إرسال جميع الأخبار إلى المحرر بحلول منتصف النهار. ثم أتناول الغداء غالبًا مع صديق. في فترة ما بعد الظهر، أبدأ في البحث عن الأخبار وإجراء المقابلات مع الأشخاص، استعدادًا لليوم التالي. في بعض الأحيان، إذا كان هناك خبر عاجل، أحتاج إلى العمل في المساء، وحتى الليل، وأحيانًا حتى في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع!

Last Monday, I was so happy. One of my articles was chosen to be one of the main stories. It was about a fire in a hotel – luckily, nobody was hurt. I think my report was liked because I interviewed lots of the **staff** who work at the hotel. I think this made my writing more interesting because I described how they felt. My editor said she liked it very much.

يوم الاثنين الماضي، كنت سعيدة جدًا. تم اختيار إحدى مقالاتي لتكون واحدة من الأخبار الرئيسية. كان الأمر يتعلق بحريق في أحد الفنادق، ولحسن الحظ لم يصب أحد بأذى. أعتقد أن تقريري نال الإعجاب لأنني أجريت مقابلات مع الكثير من الموظفين الذين يعملون في الفندق. أعتقد أن هذا جعل كتابتي أكثر إثارة للاهتمام لأنني وصفت ما شعروا به. قالت محررتي إنها أحببت ذلك كثيرًا.

As you can see, my job is very exciting, and there's something new every day. I am quite **sociable**, so I enjoy interviewing people and chatting to other journalists about news stories. However, I also like to be quiet at home when I write my news articles. I love living in Egypt, too. It's fun, and I have a lot of friends here. I'm very happy!

كما ترون، عملي مثير للغاية، وهناك شيء جديد كل يوم. أنا اجتماعية تمامًا، لذا أستمتع بإجراء المقابلات مع الأشخاص والدردشة مع الصحفيين الآخرين حول التقارير الإخبارية. ومع ذلك، أحب أيضًا أن أكون هادئة في المنزل عندما أكتب مقالاتي الإخبارية. أحب العيش في مصر أيضًا. إنه أمر ممتع، ولدي الكثير من الأصدقاء هنا. أنا سعيدة جدًا!

Read again and answer.

1. Why was Sylvia happy last Monday?

....

2. Do you think Sylvia likes her daily routine? Why?

....

3. Does Sylvia like living in Egypt? Why?

....

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sylvia is an international ....
   a) teacher b) doctor c) journalist d) scientist
2. Sylvia lives in ....
   a) Egypt b) India c) China d) USA
3. Sylvia works for an English ....
   a) zoo b) school c) newspaper d) hotel
4. Sylvia studied .... at university.
   a) teaching b) journalism c) economy d) politics

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

journalist - editor - different - breaking - get up

I love my job. It's fun, and every day is 1).......... because we don't know what news will come in. There are many kinds of journalists. I'm a news 2).........., so I write the 3).......... news, that is, the news as it starts to happen. Every day, I 4).......... early and have breakfast. Then I call my editor to see what stories I need to write about.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I interviewed lots of the .... who work at the hotel.
   a) stuff b) stiff c) staff d) story
2. Ali is .... He likes talking to, and being with, other people.
   a) shy b) sociable c) silly d) sad
3. Hani loves .... He wants to be a journalist.
   a) medicine b) teaching c) animals d) journalism
4. Malak is a/an .... journalist; she can travel to many countries.
   a) international b) local c) national d) civil
5. Heba works .... an English newspaper.
   a) in b) on c) at d) for

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi, I'm Heba. I live in Egypt. I'm a journalist. I work for an English newspaper. Last Monday, I was so happy. One of my articles was chosen to be one of the main stories. It was about a fire in a hotel – luckily, nobody was hurt. I think my report was liked because I interviewed lots of the staff who work at the hotel. I think this made my writing more interesting because I described how they felt. My editor said she liked it very much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Heba is a ....
   a) vet b) journalist c) doctor d) teacher
2. The underlined word "happy" means ....
   a) sad b) safe c) pleased d) sick
3. The article was about a fire in a ....
   a) school b) home c) flat d) hotel

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Who liked the article very much? ....
5. Why does Heba think her report was interesting? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. studied - at - Ali - journalism - university - .
   ....
2. like - Does - Sylvia - in - living - Egypt - ?
   ....
3. stories - are - All - news - the - to - sent - the editor - .
   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A TV reporter

Guiding elements:

(get up - scripts - location - soundman)

Definitions تعريفات

peaceful	very quiet and relaxing	هادئ - مريح
promise	to say that something will be done	يعد
investigate	to find out the facts about something	يحقق

Vocabulary الكلمات

trash	قمامة	polluted	ملوث	problem	مشكلة
near x far	قريب x بعيد	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	factory	مصنع
fishermen	صيادين	dangerous	خطير	unknown	غير معروف
local	محلي	wildlife	الحياة البرية	fertilizer	سماد
reporter	مراسل صحفي	notes	ملاحظات	truth	الصدق / الحقيقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
talk	يتحدث	talked	talked
die	يموت	died	died
kill	يقتل	killed	killed
test	يختبر / يفحص	tested	tested
change	يغير	changed	changed
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
get to	يصل إلى	got to	got to

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

stay with	يقيم مع	find out	يكتشف	get better	يتحسن
go for a walk	يذهب للتنزه مشيًا	come back	يعود	at the end	في النهاية
by the river	بجوار النهر	agree with	يتفق مع	clean up	ينظف
at dinner	على العشاء	take photos	يلتقط صورًا	look at	ينظر إلى

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (5)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Reporter Nadine saves the river

Every year, Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle, and cousin, Remas, at their home. It was a **peaceful** place near a river. She and her cousin always went for walks by the river, and talked to the fishermen there. Last year, when she visited, things were different. When Nadine got to the river, she saw dead fish in the water. It was very quiet there, too.

"Where are all the fishermen?" she asked her cousin.

"They've stopped coming here," said Remas, "and the fish are dying."

"But why?" asked Nadine.

"We don't know," said Remas.

في كل عام، كانت نادين تذهب لتقيم مع عمتها وعمها وابنة عمها ريماس في منزلهم. لقد كان مكانًا هادئًا بالقرب من النهر. كانت هي وابنة عمها تذهبان دائمًا للتنزه على ضفاف النهر، وتتحدثان مع الصيادين هناك. عندما زارتهم العام الماضي، كانت الأمور مختلفة. عندما وصلت نادين إلى النهر، رأت أسماكًا ميتة في الماء. كان الجو هادئًا جدًا هناك أيضًا.

سألت ابنة عمها "أين جميع الصيادين؟".

قالت ريماس: "لقد توقفوا عن المجيء إلى هنا، والأسماك تموت".

سألت نادين: "ولكن لماذا؟"

قالت ريماس: "لا نعرف".

They went home feeling sad. Nadine's uncle is the editor at the local newspaper.

"Uncle," said Nadine at dinner, "I'd like to be a news reporter. Can I work for you? I want to find out why the fish are dying. We need to do something to protect the river, or it will be destroyed. All the fish will be killed, and the fishermen will never come back."

Uncle listened carefully, and agreed with Nadine. He went to the river with her the next day.

"Look at the color of the water," he said. "That tells me the water is polluted. There could be chemicals from factories or from farms. The chemicals are dangerous for wildlife. The wildlife will all be destroyed. I'd like you to write notes about the problem, and take some photos," he said.

عادوا إلى المنزل وهم يشعرون بالحزن. عم نادين هو رئيس تحرير إحدى الصحف المحلية.

قالت نادين على العشاء: "عمي، أود أن أكون مراسلة أخبار. هل يمكنني العمل لديك؟ أريد أن أعرف لماذا تموت الأسماك. علينا أن نفعل شيئًا لحماية النهر، وإلا سيتم تدميره. سيتم قتل جميع الأسماك، ولن يعود الصيادون أبدًا".

استمع العم بعناية، واتفق مع نادين. ذهب معها إلى النهر في اليوم التالي.

قال: "انظري إلى لون الماء". "هذا يخبرني أن المياه ملوثة. يمكن أن تكون هناك مواد كيميائية من المصانع أو من المزارع. المواد الكيميائية خطيرة على الحياة البرية. سيتم تدمير جميع الحياة البرية. وقال: "أود منك أن تكتبي ملاحظات حول المشكلة، وتلتقطي بعض الصور".

Nadine and Uncle walked up the river and saw there were some factories and farms. Then they went home, and Nadine wrote her notes for her news report. Uncle read her notes and said, "This is very good, but you are going home tomorrow. I **promise** I'll send my reporter to investigate this week. Your notes will be sent to her."

سارت نادين وعمها إلى أعلى النهر ورأوا أن هناك بعض المصانع والمزارع. ثم عادوا إلى المنزل، وكتبت نادين ملاحظاتها لتقريرها الإخباري. قرأ العم ملاحظاتها وقال: "هذا جيد جدًا، لكنك ستعودين إلى المنزل غدًا. أعدك بأنني سأرسل مراسلتي الصحفية للتحقيق هذا الأسبوع. سيتم إرسال ملاحظاتك إليها."

One week later, Nadine woke up early in the morning. She went to the laptop in the living room and saw an email from her uncle. He told her to look at the website of his newspaper.

And there it was – the full story of the polluted river! Uncle's reporter interviewed people at the factory and on the farms. One of the farms was using a new fertilizer that wasn't tested correctly. It was killing the plants on the land and the fish in the river. The farmers changed their fertilizer very soon after. Now, the land and the river are starting to get better.

وبعد مرور أسبوع، استيقظت نادين في الصباح الباكر. ذهبت إلى الكمبيوتر المحمول الموجود في غرفة المعيشة وشاهدت بريدًا إلكترونيًا من عمها. قال لها أن تنظر إلى الموقع الإلكتروني لصحيفته.

وهنا كانت القصة الكاملة للنهر الملوث! أجرت مراسلة العم مقابلات مع الناس في المصنع وفي المزارع. كانت إحدى المزارع تستخدم سمادًا جديدًا لم يتم اختباره بشكل صحيح. كان يقتل النباتات الموجودة على الأرض والأسماك في النهر. قام المزارعون بتغيير الأسمدة الخاصة بهم بعد فترة وجيزة. الآن، بدأت الأرض والنهر في التحسن.

Nadine was so pleased to read the article. She was also very happy when she read in the paragraph at the end, "Thanks very much to our young reporter, Nadine Shawky. Nadine helped to save our river by asking us to **investigate** why the fish were dying. Now, the river will be cleaned up. The fish will be healthy again!"

نادين كانت سعيدة جداً بقراءة المقال. كما شعرت بسعادة غامرة عندما قرأت في الفقرة في النهاية "شكرا جزيلا لمراسلتنا الشابة نادين شوقي. ساعدت نادين في إنقاذ نهرنا عندما طلبت منا التحقيق في سبب موت الأسماك. الآن سيتم تنظيف النهر. سوف تعود الأسماك بصحة جيدة مرة أخرى!





The Future Simple Passive

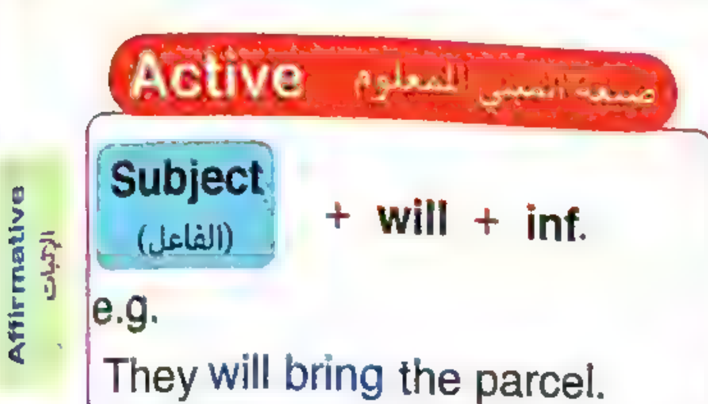
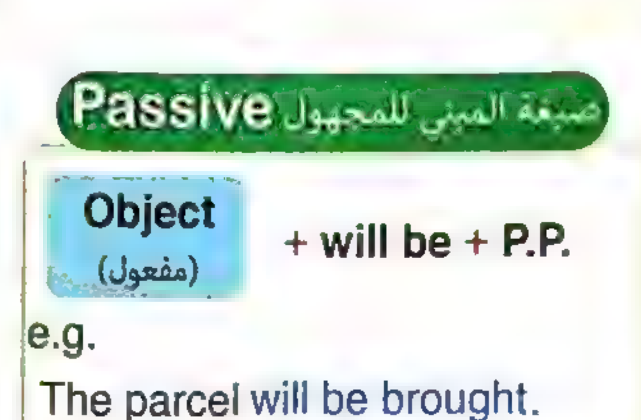
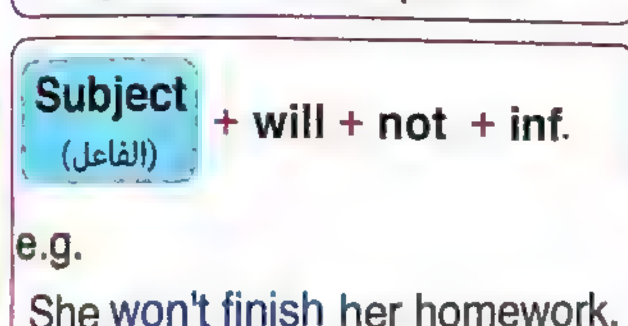
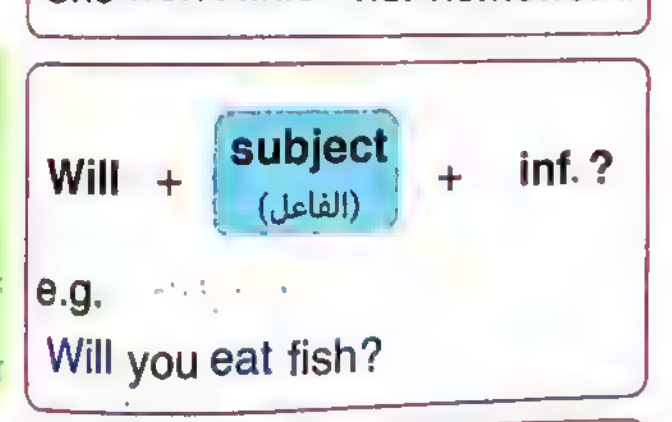
زمن المستقبل البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Usage الاستخدام

. **We often use the future simple passive "will be + P.P" in newspapers and TV reports.**

نستخدم غالبا صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن المستقبل البسيط في الصحف والتقارير التلفزيونية

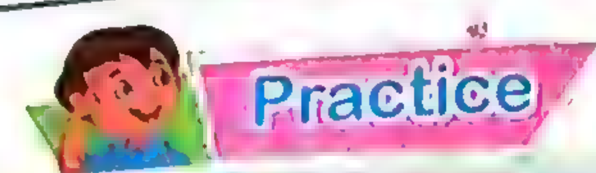
e.g. Now, the river will be cleaned up.

	Active صيغة المبني للمعلوم	Passive صيغة المبني للمجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	Subject (الفاعل) + will + inf. e.g. They will bring the parcel.	Object (مفعول) + will be + P.P. e.g. The parcel will be brought.
Negative النفي	Subject (الفاعل) + will + not + inf. e.g. She won't finish her homework.	Object (مفعول) + will not + be + P.P. e.g. Her homework won't be finished.
(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ هل	Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. ? e.g. Will you eat fish?	Will + object (مفعول) + be + P.P...? e.g. Will fish be eaten by you?
Wh- question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W + will + subject (الفاعل) + inf.? e.g. When will he visit the museum?	Q.W + will + object (مفعول) + be + P.P. ..? e.g. When will the museum be visited?

Help your child learn the future simple passive.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن المستقبل البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The fish will be ....
   a) kill b) kills c) killed d) killing
2. The wildlife in the river will .... destroyed.
   a) am b) is c) are d) be
3. The reporter's article will .... by Nadine's uncle.
   a) check b) checks c) checked d) be checked
4. The river will be ....
   a) clean b) cleaned c) cleans d) cleaning
5. The news stories .... printed in the newspaper.
   a) will b) will not c) will be d) can
6. Your notes .... be sent to her.
   a) will b) are c) were d) is
7. The chickens will .... every day.
   a) feed b) fed c) be fed d) feeds
8. The parcel will be .... tomorrow.
   a) bring b) brought c) brings d) bringing

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The river will .... (is) saved from pollution.
2. The trash will be .... (pick) up.
3. New fish will .... (is) put in the river.
4. New plants will be .... (putting) at the side of the river.
5. Dangerous fertilizers .... (won't use) again.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Every .... , Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle and cousin.
   a) day b) week c) year d) month
2. It was a .... place near a river.
   a) noisy b) peaceful c) ugly d) busy
3. She and her cousin always went for walks by the ....
   a) lake b) sea c) pond d) river
4. Nadine saw dead .... in the water.
   a) fish b) plants c) fishermen d) birds

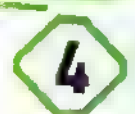
2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

website - notes - woke - promise - sent

Nadine and Uncle walked up the river and saw there were some factories and farms. Then they went home, and Nadine wrote her 1)................... for her news report. Uncle read her notes and said, "This is very good, but you are going home tomorrow. I 2)...................... I'll send my reporter to investigate this week. Your notes will be 3)...................... to her." One week later, Nadine 4)...................... up early in the morning. She went to the laptop in the living room and saw an email from her uncle. He told her to look at the website of his newspaper.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My village is a very quiet and relaxing place. It is ....
   a) peaceful b) crowded c) busy d) noisy
2. My father .... to buy a new mobile for me.
   a) bought b) promised c) thought d) checked
3. Now, the river will be .... up.
   a) clean b) cleans c) cleaned d) cleaning
4. The wildlife will .... destroyed.
   a) am b) is c) are d) be
5. All the fish will be ....
   a) kill b) killed c) kills d) killing



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Every year, Malak went to stay with her grandparents at their village. It was a peaceful place near a river. She and her grandfather always went for walks by the river, and talked to the fishermen there. Last year, when she visited, things were different. When Malak got to the river, she saw dead fish in the water. It was very quiet there, too. She went home feeling sad.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Every year, Malak went to stay with her ....

   a) **parents** b) **grandparents** c) **uncle** d) **aunt**

2. The opposite of the underlined word "peaceful" is ....

   a) **relaxing** b) **quiet** c) **nice** d) **noisy**

3. Malak went home feeling ....

   a) **happy** b) **sad** c) **excited** d) **pleased**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did Malak see when she went to the river? ....
5. Who went for a walk with Malak? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Aya's - lives - a river - cousin - near - .

   ....

2. helps - My father - to - me - find - truth - the - .

   ....

3. be - The fish - killed - will - river - the - in -.

   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

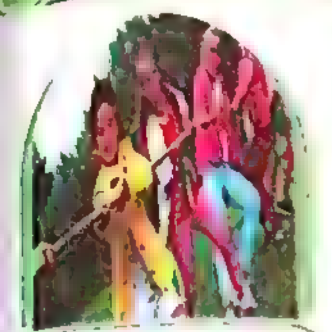
Helping the wildlife in the river

Guiding elements:

(river - clean - trash - pick up)

Lesson (6) WRITING: A NEWS REPORT

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية


tug-of-war
لعبة شد الحبل


school science fair
معرض العلوم المدرسي


school talent show
عرض المواهب المدرسي


school bake sale
معرض المخبوزات المدرسية

Vocabulary كلمات

awesome	رائع	caption	تعليق على صورة
decorate	يزين	headline	عنوان رئيسي
area	منطقة	introduction	المقدمة
plan	يخطط	main text	نص رئيسي
race	سباق	newspaper's name	اسم الجريدة
winning team	الفريق الفائز	reporter's name	اسم كاتب التقرير
running	الجري	conclusion	الخاتمة
long jump	الوثب الطويل	director	مدير
high jump	الوثب العالي	photo	صورة
popular	محبوب	further details	تفاصيل أكثر
first place	المركز الأول	field	حقل - ملعب
luckily	لحسن الحظ	laugh	يضحك
sports day	يوم رياضي	tired	مُتعب

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It was awesome!	كان رائعًا!	give out prizes	يوزع جوائز
It looked great!	بدت عظيمة!	proud of	فخور بـ
take part	يشارك - يشترك	work hard	يعمل بجد
such as	مثل	lots of	كثير من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

[1] MARLEY SCHOOL NEWS

[2] Best school sports day ever!

[3]


[4] The tug-of-war race at the end of the afternoon

[5] Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was awesome! Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the races. We think all the parents loved it, too! Many girls and boys took part, and there were many different things to see. Lots of people watched the exciting football, volleyball, and basketball games. Well done to all the winning teams!

كان يومنا الرياضي المدرسي يوم الخميس الماضي ١٣ يونيه. رائعة! قام صف الأستاذ كمال بتزيين المنطقة الرياضية - لقد بدت رائعة! خطط الأطفال الأكبر سنًا في المدرسة لجميع السباقات. نعتقد أن جميع الآباء أحبوها أيضًا! شارك العديد من الفتيات والفتيان، وكان هناك العديد من الأشياء المختلفة التي يمكن رؤيتها. شاهد الكثير من الناس مباريات كرة القدم والكرة الطائرة وكرة السلة المثيرة. حظًا سعيدًا لجميع الفرق الفائزة!

The races, such as the 100-meter running, long jump, and high jump were popular, too. Reem, from Year 3, won first place for her high jump. Reem's highest jump was one meter! Luckily, the weather was great for our sports day. The school director, Mrs Dorriya, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave out prizes. She said, "I'm so proud of all of you – you worked so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a fun tug-of-war in the field! We laughed a lot and went home tired, but happy. Our sports day was amazing!

[6] Story by Waleed

وكانت السباقات، مثل جري ١٠٠ متر، والوثب الطويل، والوثب العالي ممتعة أيضًا. حصلت ريم من الصف الثالث على المركز الأول في الوثب العالي. أعلى قفزة لريم كانت مترًا واحدًا! ولحسن الحظ، كان الطقس رائعًا ليومنا الرياضي. وكانت مديرة المدرسة السيدة درية سعيدة للغاية. وفي نهاية اليوم قامت بتوزيع الجوائز. قالت: "أنا فخورة جدًا بكم جميعًا - لقد عملتم بجد لجعل هذا اليوم رائعًا" ثم أنهينا اليوم بلعبة شد الحبل الممتعة في الملعب! ضحكنا كثيرًا وعدنا إلى المنزل متعبين ولكن سعداء. يومنا الرياضي كان مذهلًا!

1) newspaper's name	2) headline	3) photo
4) caption	5) main text	6) reporter's name

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ

Tip

Writiing a news report

- To write the main text of the news report, follow this structure:

لكتابة النص الرئيسي للتقرير الإخباري، اتبع هذا الشكل:

Introduction المقدمة: In this paragraph, we give important information about the event. It can answer who, what, why, where, and when questions.

في هذه الفقرة نقدم معلومات مهمة عن الحدث. يمكنه الإجابة عن أسئلة من وماذا ولماذا وأين ومتى.

Further details تفاصيل أكثر: In this paragraph, we give more details about the event.

في هذه الفقرة سنقدم المزيد من التفاصيل حول الحدث.

Conclusion الخاتمة: In this paragraph, we give final information and opinions.

في هذه الفقرة نعطي المعلومات والآراء النهائية.

- **Write in the past tense:**

اكتب في الزمن الماضي:

e.g. Our school sports day was last Thursday.

- **Use direct quotes from people who were at the event:**

استخدم اقتباسات مباشرة من الأشخاص الذين كانوا في الحدث:

e.g. "I'm so proud of all of you – you worked so hard to make today fantastic."

- **Include your opinion by using adjectives:**

قم بتضمين رأيك باستخدام الصفات:

e.g. Our sports day was amazing.

A school talent show

MARLEY SCHOOL NEWS

Best school talent show ever!



The song at the end of the afternoon

Our school talent show was last Monday, 1 May. It was awesome! Mr Tarek's class decorated the area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the shows. We think all the parents loved it, too! Many girls and boys took part, and there were many different things to see. Lots of people watched the lovely, acting, and dancing. Well done to all the winning teams! Habiba, from Year 3, won first place for singing. The school director, Mrs Mona, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave out prizes. She said, "I'm so proud of all of you – you worked so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a nice song.

Story by Ahmed

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our school .... day was last Thursday
   a) sports b) talent c) bake d) science
2. It was ....
   a) bad b) sad c) busy d) awesome
3. Mr Kamal's class .... the sports area
   a) swept b) cleaned c) decorated d) destroyed
4. The older children .... all the races
   a) won b) planned c) decorated d) took

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

amazing - director - tired - worked - out

Luckily, the weather was great for our sports day. The school 1)..........................., Mrs Dorriya, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave 2)........................ prizes. She said, "I'm so proud of all of you – you 3)........................ so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a fun tug-of-war in the field! We laughed a lot and went home 4)........................., but happy. Our sports day was amazing!

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. think - **We** - , too - the - all - parents - it - loved - .

   ....

2. people - of - **Lots** - the - watched - exciting - games - .

   ....

3. sports - **Our** - amazing - day - was - !

   ....

4. was - happy - **The school** - very - director - .

   ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was awesome! Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the races. We think all the parents loved it, too! Many girls and boys took part, and there were many different things to see. Lots of people watched the exciting football, volleyball, and basketball games. Well done to all the winning teams! The races, such as the 100-meter running, long jump, and high jump were popular, too. Reem, from Year 3, won first place for her high jump. Reem's highest jump was one meter!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about school ....

   a) sports day b) library c) playground d) bake sale

2. The underlined word "great" means ....

   a) bad b) ugly c) fantastic d) high

3. Reem won .... place for her high jump.

   a) second b) third c) forth d) first

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When was your school sports day? ....

5. What did lots of people watch? ....

5 Write a report of SEVENTY (70) words about:

School science fair

Guiding elements:

(14 June - do experiments - took part)

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7) STORY: FARMER SAMEH

Definitions تعريفات

barn	a building on a farm for animals to sleep in	حظيرة
fall	the time in the year when the leaves fall from the trees	فصل الخريف
shade	a dark area with no sunlight	ظل
summer	the hottest season of the year	فصل الصيف

Vocabulary الكلمات

wife	زوجة	dates	تمور	bright	لامع
land	أرض	desserts	حلوى	wooden	خشبي
enough	كافٍ	female	أنثى	terrible	فظيع
sheep	أغنام	safe	آمن	storm	عاصفة
fava beans	فول	bricks	طوب	space	مساحة
honey	عسل	summary	ملخص	moral	مغزى
figs	تين	season	فصل / موسم	sunlight	ضوء الشمس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
shout	يصيح	shouted	shouted
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
keep	يربي	kept	kept
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
shine	تشرق	shone	shone
burn	يحترق	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
sit	يجلس	sat	sat

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look after	يعتني بـ	important to	هام لـ	burn down	يحترق
have a baby	تلد	at all	على الإطلاق	at the start	في بداية
worry about	يقلق بشأن	stay in	يمكث في	in the end	في النهاية
made of	مصنوع من	on farm	في المزرعة	sleep in	ينام في

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (7)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Farmer Sameh



Farmer Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife, Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They didn't have a lot of land, but they had enough to grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh kept sheep and chickens, and the children helped him look after them. Amina grew fava beans so she could make delicious ful mudamas. Monir and Menna had some bees, so they could have honey. With the honey, and the figs and dates from their trees, they could make awesome desserts.

كان المزارع سامح يعيش حياة سعيدة جداً. كان يعيش في مزرعة مع زوجته أمينة وأولاده منير ومنة. لم يكن لديهم الكثير من الأراضي، لكن كان لديهم ما يكفي لزراعة الطعام ليأكلوه والقليل لبيعه في السوق. كان سامح يربي الأغنام والدجاج، وكان الأطفال يساعدونه في رعايتهم. قامت أمينة بزراعة الفول حتى تتمكن من إعداد الفول المدمس اللذيذ. كان لدى منير ومنة بعض النحل حتى يتمكنوا من الحصول على العسل. باستخدام العسل والتين والتمر من أشجارهم، يمكنهم صنع حلويات رائعة.

The family had an old **barn** where they kept the sheep. It was very important on cold and rainy days, or when the female sheep were having babies. Sameh's friends, Hazem and Fareed, were worried about the barn. They thought it was too old and not safe. "Sameh," said Hazem, "your barn is very old and made of wood – it could easily burn."

"Why don't you build a better barn from bricks?" asked Hazem.

Sameh replied, "Because this year, I need to buy more sheep."

That year, **summer** was very hot. There was no rain at all. The sun shone every day, and the sky was bright blue. The wooden barn got very hot from the sun. One day, it started burning. Sameh was at the market, but luckily, Amina was near and she saved the sheep from the barn. Hazem and Fareed came running.

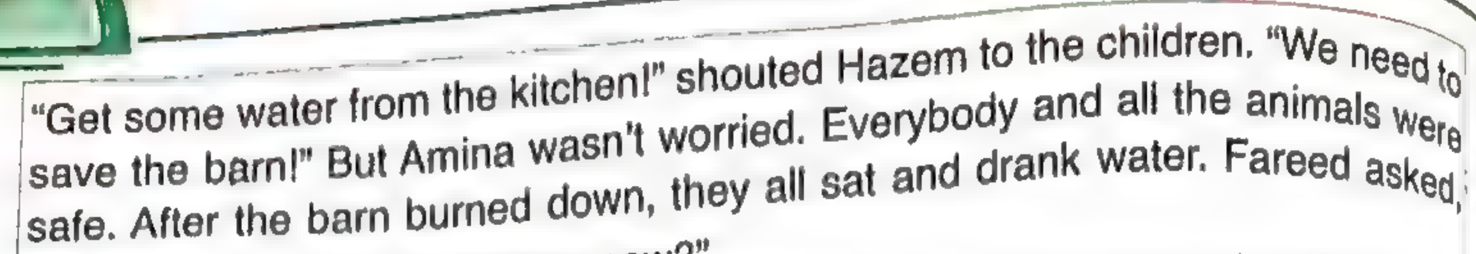
كان لدى العائلة حظيرة قديمة حيث كانوا يربون الأغنام. كان ذلك مهمًا جدًا في الأيام الباردة والممطرة، أو عندما تلد الأغنام.

كان أصدقاء سامح، حازم وفريد، قلقين بشأن الحظيرة. ظنوا أنها قديمة جدًا وغير آمنة. قال حازم: "سامح، حظيرتك قديمة جدًا ومصنوعة من الخشب، ويمكن أن تحترق بسهولة".

سأل حازم:"لماذا لا تبنيْ حظيرة أفضل من الطوب؟"

فأجاب سامح: «لأنني هذا العام بحاجة لشراء المزيد من الأغنام».

في ذلك العام، كان الصيف حارًا جدًا. لم يكن هناك مطر على الإطلاق. كانت الشمس تشرق كل يوم، وكانت السماء زرقاء زاهية. أصبحت الحظيرة الخشبية شديدة الحرارة بسبب الشمس. وفي أحد الأيام، بدأت تحترق. كان سامح في السوق، لكن لحسن الحظ كانت أمينة قريبة وأنقذت الأغنام من الحظيرة. ركض حازم وفريد.



"Get some water from the kitchen!" shouted Hazem to the children. "We need to save the barn!" But Amina wasn't worried. Everybody and all the animals were safe. After the barn burned down, they all sat and drank water. Fareed asked, "Where will you put the sheep now?"

صاح حازم على الأطفال: "أحضروا بعض الماء من المطبخ!" "نحن بحاجة لإنقاذ الحظيرة!" لكن أمينة لم تكن قلقة. كل الأشخاص وجميع الحيوانات
كانوا آمنين. بعد أن احترقت الحظيرة، جلسوا جميعًا وشربوا الماء. فسأل فريد: "أين ستضع الأغنام الآن؟"

Amina replied, "We have some trees, so they can stay in the **shade** until the new barn is ready."

"Will you build another barn?" asked Hazem.

"Oh yes," said Amina, "it'll be fine."

Sameh and his family worked hard through the summer. They built a new, bigger barn with bricks. In the **fall**, the new barn was ready. It was big enough for all their sheep. Their friends came to see the new barn.

"Well done," said Hazem.

"This new barn is great," said Fareed.

Later that year, there was a terrible storm.

Sameh and Amina put the sheep in the new barn. Hazem and Fareed came running with their sheep.

"Please can we put our sheep here?" Hazem asked.

"Yes, of course," said Amina.

"There's lots of space," Sameh said.

"I was sad and worried when our old barn burned down. Now, we have this big, fantastic barn!"

Everybody laughed and agreed.

فاجابت أمينة: "لدينا بعض الأشجار، لذا يمكنهم البقاء في الظل حتى تصبح الحظيرة الجديدة جاهزة."
سأل حازم: "هل ستبنون حظيرة أخرى؟"
قالت أمينة: "أوه نعم، سيكون الأمر على ما يرام".
عمل سامح وعائلته بجد خلال فصل الصيف. قاموا ببناء حظيرة جديدة أكبر بالطوب. وفي الخريف، كانت الحظيرة الجديدة جاهزة. وكانت كبيرة بما
يكفي لجميع أغنامهم. جاء أصدقاؤهم لرؤية الحظيرة الجديدة.
قال حازم: "أحسنت".
قال فريد: "هذه الحظيرة الجديدة رائعة".
وفي وقت لاحق من ذلك العام، حدثت عاصفة رهيبة.
وضع سامح وأمينة الأغنام في الحظيرة الجديدة. جاء حازم وفريد يركضون مع غنمهم.
سأل حازم: "من فضلك هل يمكننا وضع أغنامنا هنا؟"
قالت أمينة: "نعم، بالطبع".
قال سامح: «هناك مساحة كبيرة».
"شعرت بالحزن والقلق عندما احترقت حظيرتنا القديمة. الآن، لدينا هذه الحظيرة الكبيرة والرائعة!
ضحك الجميع ووافقوا على كلامي.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sameh lived on a .... with his wife.
   a) farm b) home c) house d) flat
2. They didn't have a lot of ....
   a) water b) land c) food d) sheep
3. Sameh kept .... and chickens.
   a) cows b) goats c) dogs d) sheep
4. Amina grew .... so she could make delicious ful mudamas.
   a) onions b) carrots c) fava beans d) tomatos

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

school - market - shone - barn - rain

That year, summer was very hot. There was no 1)...................... at all. The sun 2)...................... every day, and the sky was bright blue. The wooden 3)...................... got very hot from the sun. One day, it started burning. Sameh was at the 4)......................, but luckily, Amina was near and she saved the sheep from the barn.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. " .... " is a building on a farm for animals to sleep in.
   a) Barn b) Cage c) Box d) Cave
2. " .... " is the time in the year when leaves fall from the trees.
   a) Summer b) Spring c) Winter d) Fall
3. " .... " is a dark area with no sunlight.
   a) Shape b) Shade c) Shame d) Show
4. " .... " is the hottest season of the year.
   a) Spring b) Fall c) Summer d) Winter
5. Bad news can become good news .... the end.
   a) in b) of c) on d) for

Writing Corner

A garage sale

Every year we have a garage sale at our school. This means volunteers from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen equipment. These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. These items are sold to anyone who would like to buy them. The money we collect is used to help children who need health care in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children with our teachers. Everyone is really happy!

The cheetahs

Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India – Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they are fed every day. They aren't watched all the time, but they are tracked so they don't get lost.

A school sports day

Best school sports day ever!



The tug-of-war race at the end of the afternoon

Our school sports day was last Sunday, 20 May. It was awesome! Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the races. We think all the parents loved it, too!

Luckily, the weather was great for our sports day. The school director, Mrs Mona, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave out prizes. She said, "I'm so proud of all of you – you worked so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a fun tug-of-war in the field! We laughed a lot and went home tired, but happy. Our sports day was amazing!

Story by Ali

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

Review on Unit (6)

Vocabulary

garage sale	معرض للأشياء المستعملة	journalism	الصحافة
equipment	معدات	journalist	صحفي
responsible	مسئول	breaking news	أخبار عاجلة
vaccinations	تطعيمات - أمصال	staff	طاقم العمل - هيئة الموظفين
editor	محرر - رئيس تحرير	sociable	شخص اجتماعي
volunteers	متطوعون	peaceful	هادئ / مريح
hutch	قفص "أرنب"	promise	يعد
check on	يفحص - يطمئن على	investigate	يحقق
newspaper	جريدة	tug-of-war	لعبة شد الحبل
cheetah	الفهد الصياد	school science fair	معرض العلوم المدرسي
India	دولة الهند	school talent show	عرض المواهب المدرسي
Indians	الهنود	school bake sale	معرض المخبوزات لمدرسية
giant panda	الباندا العملاقة	barn	حظيرة
news	أخبار	fall	فصل الخريف
bamboo	خيزران - البامبو	summer	فصل الصيف
international	عالمي - دولي	shade	ظل

Good news phrases

عبارات خاصة بالأخبار الجيدة

Oh, wow! That's great!	أوه، واو! هذا رائع!
That's amazing news!	هذه أخبار مدهشة!
I'm so pleased for you!	أنا مسرور جدًا لك!
Well done!	أحسنت!

Bad news phrases

عبارات خاصة بالأخبار السيئة

Oh, no! That's too bad!	أوه لا! هذا سيء للغاية!
Better luck next time.	حظًا أوفر المرة القادمة.
I'm sorry to hear that!	أنا حزين لسماع ذلك!
What a pity!	يا للأسف!



The Past Simple Passive

Affirmative الإثبات

Object (مفعول) + was / were + P.P.

e.g. Bamboo was eaten by pandas.

Negative النفي

Object (مفعول) + was / were + not + P.P.

e.g. The panda wasn't fed.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question:

Was / Were + object (مفعول) + P.P...?

e.g. Were the videos posted by Ali?

Wh-question:

Q.W + was / were + object (مفعول) + P.P...?

e.g. Where was the giant panda found?

The Future Simple Passive

زمن المستقبل البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Affirmative الإثبات

Object (مفعول) + will + be + P.P.

e.g. The parcel will be brought.

Negative النفي

Object (مفعول) + will + not + be + P.P.

e.g. Her homework won't be finished.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question:

Will + object (مفعول) + be + P.P...?

Will fish be eaten?



Dictation on Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

متطوع	معرض للأشياء المستعملة ....
قفص	معدات ....
يفحص - يطمئن على	مسئول ....
جريدة	تعليمات - أمصال ....

Lesson (2)

أخبار	الفهد الصياد ....
دب الباندا العملاق	دولة الهند ....
خيزران - البامبو	الهنود ....

Lesson (3)

أحسنت!	أوه، واو! هذا رائع! ....
حظًا أوفر المرة القادمة	أوه لا! هذا سيء للغاية! ....

Lesson (4)

صحفي	عالمي - دولي ....
طاقم العمل	الصحافة ....
شخص اجتماعي	أخبار عاجلة ....

Lesson (5)

يعد	هادئ / مريح ....
مواد كيميائية	يحقق ....

Lesson (6)

معرض العلوم المدرسي	لعبة شد الحبل ....
عرض المواهب المدرسي	معرض المخبوزات المدرسية ....

Lesson (7)

فصل الخريف	حظيرة ....
فصل الصيف	ظل ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My class has a class ....
   a) rat   b) rabbit   c) duck   d) bird
2. He lives in a small house called a ....
   a) hutch   b) box   c) cage   d) jar
3. He loves .... and lettuce!
   a) onions   b) pepper   c) carrots   d) potatoes
4. The vet comes in once a week to .... on Crunchy.
   a) help   b) check   c) get   d) call

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

put - protected - bamboo - destroyed - conservation

Sadly, some years ago, giant pandas were put in danger. Much of their habitat was 1)........................ to build new homes. Their habitat wasn't protected. Pandas only eat 2)........................ , which was cut down for the houses. Many people were very worried, so the pandas were put into special areas, where they were 3)........................ They were given as much bamboo as they could eat. This 4)........................ work has been very successful. In the 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pandas. Now there are almost 2,000!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Farmer Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife, Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They didn't have a lot of land, but they had enough to grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh kept sheep and chickens, and the children helped him look after them. Amina grew fava beans so she could make delicious ful mudamas. The family had an old barn where they kept the sheep. It was very important on cold and rainy days, or when the female sheep were having babies. Sameh's friends, Hazem and Fareed, were worried about the barn. They thought it was too old and not <u>safe</u>. They advised Sameh to build a new one from bricks.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sameh had a very .... life.
   a) busy   b) sad   c) happy   d) bad
2. The opposite of the underlined word "safe" is ....
   a) dangerous   b) happy   c) delicious   d) little
3. They had an old .... where they kept the sheep.
   a) room   b) barn   c) cave   d) tree

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why did Amina grow fava beans? ....
5. What was Sameh's friends' advice? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem read everybody's writing. (..............................)
2. Bassant reported on the sports games. (..............................)
3. Bassant loved science and the environment. (..............................)
4. Nadine was really interested in science. (..............................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

5. Who was the newspaper team's photographer? ....
6. Why was the family lived near the school sad? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The pandas .... put into special areas.
   a) was b) were c) am d) is
2. The cheetahs aren't .... every day.
   a) feed b) feeds c) fed d) feeding
3. The bamboo .... down for the pandas to eat.
   a) was cut b) were cut c) was cutting d) were cutting
4. A letter will .... tomorrow.
   a) send b) sent c) be sent d) sending
5. Will more things be .... online in the future?
   a) sell b) sells c) sold d) selling
6. English won't .... spoken at the presentation.
   a) was b) is c) are d) be

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Giant - love - pandas - bamboo - eating - .

....

2. studied - All - at - journalism - university - .

....

3. was - Heba - last - Why - excited - Monday - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

The life of a journalist

Guiding elements:

(international - newspaper - journalism)

Review (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب :

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. At the end of 25, Omar was a ....
   a) teacher b) banker c) doctor d) farmer
2. Omar had an ....
   a) accident b) e-mail c) apple d) earache
3. The doctor removed part of his ....
   a) arm b) head c) heart d) leg
4. Omar started .... hard and working on his fitness.
   a) eating b) playing c) training d) running

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

woke - off - picked - in - figured

I've just got back from Luxor! When we got to Luxor, we filled 1).................. the form at the hotel, and went to our room. It was very nice and comfortable. Mom 2).................. me up early so we could visit my uncle. He lives outside the city, so we left at 7 am. We 3).................. out a good route, and enjoyed the countryside. We loved being at Uncle's house, and had a delicious lunch there. On the way back to Luxor, we dropped 4).................. Uncle's friend at the bus stop. It was a fun day. I wish we lived nearer to Uncle, so we could see him more often!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Junko Tabei was a famous and brave adventurer , who did every challenge she could. She loved climbing mountains and was the first woman to climb Mount Everest. She was born in 1939, and at that time, girls didn't usually do outdoor activities. But she trained hard on the mountains from the age of ten! As Junko grew up, she became more ambitious , and tried higher and higher mountains! She became fascinated by English, and started learning the language. She then learned many textbooks in English about climbing. Junko was also very sociable – she enjoyed making friends, and helped other women to become climbers, too. She knew about all kinds of dangerous weather on mountains, including avalanches . This is when snow high up falls down the mountain – it can be very frightening.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Junko Tabei was a famous and brave ....
   a) adventurer b) editor c) sailor d) player
2. As Junko grew up, she became more ...., and tried higher and higher mountains
   a) quiet b) proud c) ambitious d) lazy
3. The underlined word "started" means ....
   a) ended b) began c) went d) took

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When was Junko Tabei born? ....
5. How did Junko Tabei help other women? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Bassant went on a school trip with her class to the zoo. (..........................)
2. Hatem went to check the paper for printing. (..........................)
3. The team were excited because they had some great stories. (..........................)
4. Nadine knew a lot about sports. (..........................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

5. What did the newspaper team make to find the cat? ....
6. Where was Mr Medhat? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. How often .... the animals fed?
   a) are b) is c) was d) will
2. Mom woke me .... early yesterday.
   a) in b) on c) up d) at
3. The homework won't be .... this evening.
   a) finish b) finishes c) finished d) finishing
4. Pandas were .... as much bamboo as they could eat.
   a) give b) gives c) gave d) given
5. She .... off her husband before he traveled.
   a) saw b) filled c) woke d) put
6. Cars with petrol won't .... in the future.
   a) use b) used c) be used d) uses

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to - I - went - to investigate - the restaurant - the accident - .
2. the challenges - What - of - were - the trip - ?
3. become - can - Bad news - in - good news - the end - .

7 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about : "Your visit to Luxor"

Your friend's email address is Ali@gmail.com. Your name is Hani and your email address is Hani@gmail.com.

Guiding elements:

(hotel - comfortable - lunch)



Work with a partner. Label the parts of the newspaper.

caption - headline - newspaper's name - photo - reporter's name

1 ....

2 ....

Darsy Primary School News

Volleyball team wins again!

3 ....



4 .... —*Team celebrating their win*

Our volleyball team won their game yesterday. They played the team from Dot Hilland School. This means they are now in second place. If they win their next game, they will be the winners for the whole of the town. If you can, please go to see them play in the final next Saturday and support them! They are doing so well!

Story by Gameela Hamdy

5 ....

New drama group after school

The new drama group have been rehearsing in the gym after school on Thursdays. They have chosen a surprise play for the new term!

Science corner: new equipment arrives

The Head of Science has announced that the new DNA Helix Activity models have been delivered and are available for use in the Science room.

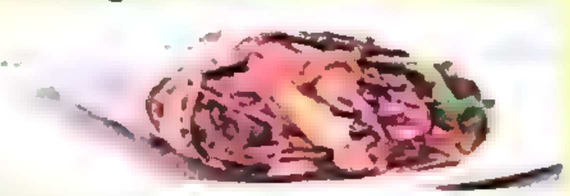
Video game review

Last week, I tried out the new Super City video game. I really liked it. The stories are very interesting, and I thought the one called Adventurers in Space was great. We can play as the main character, so I felt as if I was really traveling on a spaceship. The only thing I didn't like was the music – it was a bit slow and boring.

Overall, I give Super City 4 out of 5 stars.



Cooking corner



Delicious shawerma for your family

Ingredients: chicken, yogurt, garlic, chilies, lemons, spices, vinegar, vegetable oil

Method: Cut the chicken into small slices, the put two teaspoonfuls of spices on it, a cup of yogurt, and some vinegar. Mix this well, then put it in the fridge for at least four hours. Fry the garlic and chilies in a large pan with some vegetable oil, then add the chicken and stir well for five minutes. Turn the heat down, and keep the chicken on the stove until is well-cooked. Add some water if you need to.

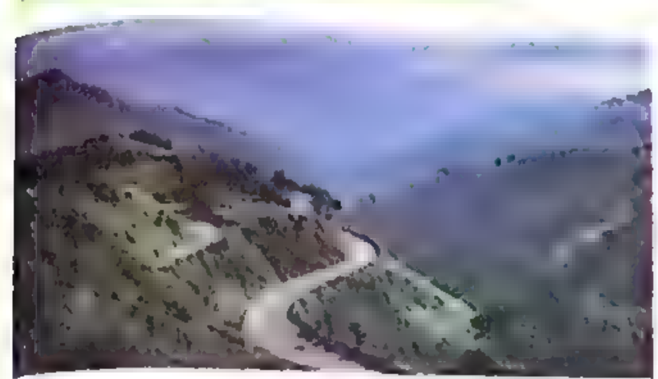
Puzzle page

Go to page 4 to find six foods in the wordsearch

NON-FICTION READER

THE SILK ROAD

Listen and read.





Today, it's easy to buy and sell **goods** in different parts of the world. When we want to move things from one country to another, we can use big ships, fast trains, trucks, or planes. Because of the internet, we can shop in stores that are a long way from our homes. However, many years ago, it was difficult to buy and sell things from far away.

اليوم، أصبح من السهل شراء وبيع البضائع في أجزاء مختلفة من العالم. عندما نريد نقل الأشياء من بلد إلى آخر، يمكننا استخدام السفن الكبيرة أو القطارات السريعة أو الشاحنات أو الطائرات. بفضل الإنترنت، أصبح بإمكاننا التسوق في المتاجر البعيدة عن منازلنا. ومع ذلك، منذ سنوات عديدة، كان من الصعب شراء وبيع الأشياء من أماكن بعيدة.

The **Silk** Road changed this. In 130 BCE, a **trade route** was opened from Xi'an, a large, rich city in China. Over time, it reached the Mediterranean Sea. Today, we call it the Silk Road, but it was actually a number of routes covering nearly 6,500 kilometers. These routes went through many countries and different types of land, across deserts and mountains. The Silk Road was very important for over 1,500 years.

لقد غيّر طريق الحرير هذا. وفي عام ١٣٠ قبل الميلاد، تم افتتاح طريق تجاري من شيآن، وهي مدينة كبيرة وغنية في الصين. ومع مرور الوقت، وصلت إلى البحر الأبيض المتوسط. اليوم، نسميه طريق الحرير، لكنه كان في الواقع عبارة عن عدد من الطرق التي تغطي ما يقرب من ٦,٥٠٠ كيلومتر. مرت هذه الطرق عبر العديد من البلدان وأنواع مختلفة من الأراضي، عبر الصحاري والجبال. كان طريق الحرير مهمًا جدًا لأكثر من ١,٥٠٠ عام.

The Silk Road has its name because people traded silk between China, in the east, and the countries we now know as Europe, in the west. Silk was a very expensive material, and at first, it was only made in China. The Silk Road made it possible for people in other countries to buy it for the first time. Many other things were traded on the Silk Road, too. From China, people also sold things

such as **precious stones**, perfumes, tea, and spices. From Europe, people sold things such as horses, wool, silver, olive oil, and items made from glass.

سمي طريق الحرير بهذا الاسم لأن الناس كانوا يتاجرون بالحرير بين الصين، في الشرق، والدول التي نعرفها الآن باسم أوروبا، في الغرب. كان الحرير مادة باهظة الثمن، وفي البداية كان يُصنع فقط في الصين. لقد أتاح طريق الحرير للناس في البلدان الأخرى شرائه لأول مرة. وتم تداول العديد من الأشياء الأخرى على طريق الحرير أيضًا. ومن الصين، باع الناس أيضًا أشياء مثل الأحجار الكريمة والعطور والشاي والتوابل. ومن أوروبا، باع الناس أشياء مثل الخيول والصوف والفضة وزيت الزيتون والأشياء المصنوعة من الزجاج.

Traveling on the Silk Road was hard. The roads were sometimes old and dangerous, and people had to be very experienced to cross the deserts. Camels were an important form of transportation because they could travel long distances in hot, dry weather. Sometimes, people tried to steal money or goods, and it was safer for traders to travel in large groups, called caravans.

كان السفر على طريق الحرير أمرًا صعبًا. وكانت الطرق في بعض الأحيان قديمة وخطيرة، وكان على الناس أن يتمتعوا بخبرة كبيرة لعبور الصحاري. كانت الجمال وسيلة نقل مهمة لأنها تستطيع السفر لمسافات طويلة في الطقس الحار والجاف. في بعض الأحيان، حاول الناس سرقة الأموال أو البضائع، وكان من الأكثر أمانًا للتجار السفر في مجموعات كبيرة تسمى القوافل.

However, the Silk Road was important for more than just buying and selling goods. **Traders** met people from other cultures when they traveled to new places. This meant that they shared ideas and things from their culture, such as food, music, and crafts. For example, paper was an invention from China that traveled around the world. Some people studied the stars, and so they taught other people what they knew.

ومع ذلك، كان طريق الحرير مهمًا لأكثر من مجرد بيع وشراء البضائع. كان التجار يلتقون بأشخاص من ثقافات أخرى عندما سافروا إلى أماكن جديدة. وهذا يعني أنهم شاركوا الأفكار والأشياء من ثقافتهم، مثل الطعام والموسيقى والحرف اليدوية. على سبيل المثال، كان الورق اختراعًا من الصين وانتقل في كل أنحاء العالم. درس بعض الناس النجوم، ولذلك علموا الآخرين ما يعرفونه.

Lots of places and buildings, have an interesting history because of the Silk Road. Many towns along the routes became rich, important cities, such as Constantinople (now Istanbul) and Damascus. Large **inns**—or caravanserais —were built as places for travelers to eat and rest, too.

Nowadays, it's easy and quick to move goods, but the Silk Road made it possible for countries to trade goods and share ideas, over 2,000 years ago!

تتمتع الكثير من الأماكن والمباني بتاريخ مثير للاهتمام بسبب طريق الحرير. أصبحت العديد من البلدات الواقعة على طول الطرق مدنًا غنية ومهمة، مثل القسطنطينية (إسطنبول حاليًا) ودمشق. تم بناء النزل الكبيرة - أو الخانات - لتكون أماكن للمسافرين لتناول الطعام والراحة أيضًا. في الوقت الحاضر، أصبح نقل البضائع أمرًا سهلاً وسريعًا، لكن طريق الحرير جعل من الممكن للدول تبادل السلع وتبادل الأفكار، منذ أكثر من ٢,٠٠٠ عام!

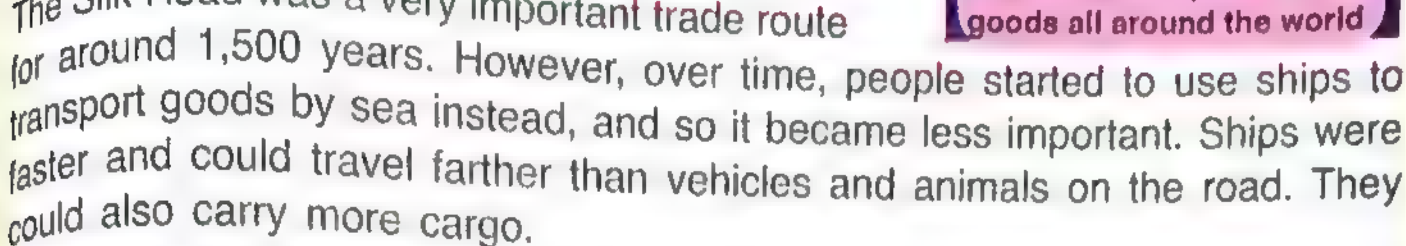
Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.

Transportation today

وسائل النقل اليوم



Huge cargo ships transport goods all around the world

The Silk Road was a very important trade route for around 1,500 years. However, over time, people started to use ships to transport goods by sea instead, and so it became less important. Ships were faster and could travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road. They could also carry more cargo.

كان طريق الحرير طريقًا تجاريًا مهمًا جدًا لنحو ١,٥٠٠ عام. ومع ذلك، مع مرور الوقت، بدأ الناس في استخدام السفن لنقل البضائع عن طريق البحر بدلا من ذلك، وبالتالي أصبح أقل أهمية. كانت السفن أسرع ويمكنها السفر لمسافة أبعد من المركبات والحيوانات على الطريق. يمكنهم أيضا حمل المزيد من البضائع.

For many years, people made very long, and sometimes dangerous,journeys by sea from Asia, around the continent of Africa, to Europe. However, in 1869, the Suez Canal was opened to help with this problem. It was built to make a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea. It connected Port Said, on the Mediterranean Sea, with the city of Suez. The Suez Canal is about 193 kilometers long, and it makes the journey around 7,000 kilometers shorter!

لسنوات عديدة، كان الناس يقومون برحلات بحرية طويلة جدًا، وفي بعض الأحيان خطيرة من آسيا و حول قارة أفريقيا و إلى أوروبا. ومع ذلك، في عام ١٨٦٩، تم فتح قناة السويس للمساعدة في حل هذه المشكلة. تم بناؤها لإنشاء طريق بحري أسرع بكثير من البحر الأحمر في آسيا إلى البحر الأبيض المتوسط. وكانت تربط مدينة بورسعيد على البحر الأبيض المتوسط بمدينة السويس. يبلغ طول قناة السويس حوالي ١٩٣ كيلومترًا، مما يجعل الرحلة أقصر بحوالي ٧,٠٠٠ كيلومترا!

Today, the Suez Canal is used by nearly 19,000 cargo ships a year, so it's a very important sea route for businesses. A lot of today's businesses are global.

واليوم، تستخدم قناة السويس ما يقرب من ١٩,٠٠٠ سفينة شحن سنويًا، لذا فهي طريق بحري مهم جدًا للشركات. الكثير من الشركات التجارية اليوم عالمية.

This means that they trade with other businesses in countries all over the world. These businesses often use huge ships to export goods, to sell and move things to other countries. Goods that are exported from Egypt include cotton, rice, and onions. Goods can also be imported into a country. That is, they are bought from another country. Important goods that are imported into Egypt include some types of metal and paper.

وهذا يعني أنهم يتاجرون مع شركات أخرى في بلدان في جميع أنحاء العالم. غالبًا ما تستخدم هذه الشركات السفن الضخمة لتصدير البضائع وبيعها ونقل الأشياء إلى بلدان أخرى. وتشمل السلع التي يتم تصديرها من مصر القطن والأرز والبصل. يمكن أيضًا استيراد البضائع إلى بلد ما. أي يتم شراؤها من بلد آخر. ومن السلع الهامة التي يتم استيرادها إلى مصر بعض أنواع المعادن والورق.

Transportation and technology are changing all the time. As well as ships,we now have planes and fast trains to help move goods all around the world However, it looks like the Suez Canal will be important to us for a long time to come!

وسائل النقل والتكنولوجيا تتغير طوال الوقت. بالإضافة إلى السفن، لدينا الآن طائرات وقطارات سريعة للمساعدة في نقل البضائع في جميع أنحاء العالم. ومع ذلك، يبدو أن قناة السويس ستكون مهمة بالنسبة لنا لفترة طويلة قادمة!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Read and write YES or NO.

1. Ships could travel faster and farther than animals on the road. (.........)
2. The journey by sea, from Asia to Europe, was short and safe. (.........)
3. The Suez Canal is 2,000 kilometers long. (.........)
4. Today, about 19,000 cargo ships use the Suez Canal every year. (.........)
5. Egypt exports wool and rice and imports coal and paper. (.........)
6. Today, fast trains and planes are also used to transport cargo. (.........)
7. Silk was a very cheap material. (.........)
8. Paper was invented in England. (.........)
9. When large groups travel together, we call them caravans. (.........)
10. Huge cargo ships transport goods all around the world. (.........)
11. Ships could carry more cargo than animals. (.........)
12. The Suez Canal was important for businesses. (.........)
13. Transportation and technology are changing all the time. (.........)

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did the Silk Road start? ....
2. What types of land did it cross? ....
3. What goods did people from China sell? ....
4. What goods did people from Europe sell? ....
5. Why was the Silk Road sometimes dangerous? ....
6. What things from their culture did people share? ....
7. How did the Silk Road change trade and culture in the past? ....
8. How has the Suez Canal changed trade and global culture today? .....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 7

Making a new world

In this unit, the students will

- read and find specific information.
- understand and use the second conditional.
- listen for specific details.
- understand a sequence of events in a text.
- understand and use (not) as ... as to compare.
- describe objects using sounds/looks/ feels like.
- write about a solution to a problem, including reasons.
- understand key words and phrases in a story.

Young inventors working hard!

Lesson (1) PEOPLE AND THE PLANET

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

edible cutlery	أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل	glow-in-the-dark	منير في الظلام
bike path	مسار دراجات	filter straw	شفاطة الترشيح
decompose	يتحلل	bacteria	بكتيريا
prevent	يمنع	diseases	أمراض

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

inventions	اختراعات	ocean	محيط
blog	مدونة	popular	محبوب - مشهور
planet	كوكب	flour	دقيق
knives	سكاكين	environment	البيئة
spoons	ملاعق	safe	آمن
plastic	بلاستيك	comments	تعليقات
tasty	لذيذ	material	مادة خام
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
cyclists	راكبي الدراجات	dangerous	خطير

Definitions تعريفات

bacteria	something that can cause disease	بكتيريا
decompose	to break into small parts	يتحلل
disease	a sickness	مرض
prevent	to stop something from happening	يمنع
store	to keep	يخزن

Great inventions اختراعات رائعة

glow-in-the-dark bike path	This can help people cycle safely at night.	مسار دراجات منير في الظلام
edible cutlery	This is something that you can eat.	أدوات مائدة صالحة للأكل
filter straw	This can stop people getting sick.	شفاطة الترشيح

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
stay	يبقى - يمكث	stayed	stayed
glow	ينير - يضئ	glowed	glowed
store	يخزن	stored	stored
remove	يزيل	removed	removed
solve	يحل	solved	solved
cause	يسبب	caused	caused

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
know	يعرف	knew	known
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

welcome to	مرحبًا بكم في	in different flavors	بنكهات مختلفة
my own inventions	اختراعاتي	during the day	أثناء النهار
cool inventions	اختراعات رائعة	takeaway food	وجبات سريعة / جاهزة
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار لـ
at night	ليلًا	in the ground	في الأرض
pass through	يمر خلال	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
fewer people	عدد أقل من الناس	get into	يدخل في
get sick	يمرض	a better idea	فكرة أفضل

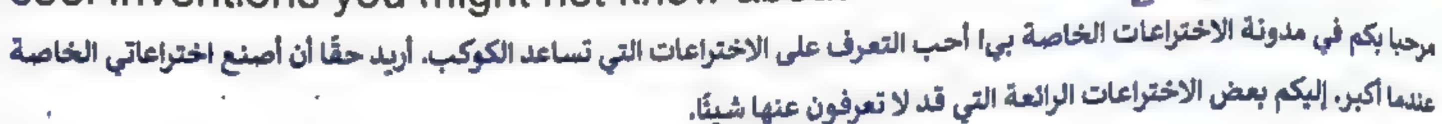
Listen and read.

< > ⋮ X

People and our planet

الناس وكوكبنا

Welcome to my inventions blog! I love learning about inventions that help the planet. I really want to make my own inventions when I'm older. Here are some cool inventions you might not know about.


مرحبا بكم في مدونة الاختراعات الخاصة بي! أحب التعرف على الاختراعات التي تساعد الكوكب. أريد حقًا أن أصنع اختراعاتي الخاصة عندما أكبر. إليكم بعض الاختراعات الرائعة التي قد لا تعرفون عنها شيئًا.

Edible cutlery

Having takeaway food with friends and family is great. However, plastic knives, forks, and spoons are bad for the planet. We usually use plastic cutlery once, then throw it away. Plastic doesn't decompose, so it stays in the ground for a long time. Some plastic can then get into the ocean. Lots of people want to find a better idea, and cutlery that you can eat is becoming popular. This can be made with special rice, or flour, and some edible cutlery comes in different flavors, too!

أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل

إن تناول الوجبات الجاهزة مع الأصدقاء والعائلة أمر رائع. ومع ذلك، فإن السكاكين والشوك والملاعق البلاستيكية ضارة بالكوكب. عادة ما نستخدم أدوات المائدة البلاستيكية مرة واحدة، ثم نرميها. البلاستيك لا يتحلل، لذلك يبقى في الأرض لفترة طويلة. يمكن لبعض البلاستيك بعد ذلك أن يصل إلى المحيط. يرغب الكثير من الأشخاص في العثور على فكرة أفضل، وأدوات المائدة التي يمكنك تناولها أصبحت شائعة. يمكن صنع هذا باستخدام أرز خاص أو دقيق، وبعض أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل تأتي بنكهات مختلفة أيضًا!

Glow-in-the-dark bike paths

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel – it keeps you fit, and it's good for the environment. In some countries, people are using a new material for bike paths which glows in the dark. It stores solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the path glows softly. Cyclists can see where they are going in the dark. It's safe, and it's good for the environment!

4 0

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

< > ⋮ X

مسارات للدراجات تنير في الظلام

نعلم جميعًا أن ركوب الدراجات وسيلة جيدة للسفر - فهي تحافظ على لياقتك البدنية، كما أنها مفيدة للبيئة. في بعض البلدان، يستخدم الناس مادة جديدة لمسارات الدراجات تتوهج في الظلام. تقوم بتخزين الطاقة الشمسية خلال النهار. ثم، في الليل، يضيء المسار بهدوء. يمكن لراكبي الدراجات رؤية أين يتجهون في الظلام. إنها آمنة، وهي جيدة للبيئة!

Filter straws

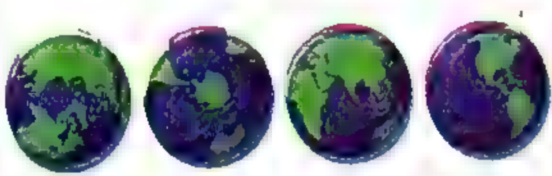
When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of straw solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous **bacteria** from water. The bacteria can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have **prevented diseases** in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

شفاطات الترشيح

عندما نفكر في شفاطات الشرب، فإننا عادة نفكر في شرب شيء لذيذ. ومع ذلك، هناك نوع واحد من الشفاطات يحل المشاكل الناجمة عن المياه القذرة. تعمل شفاطة الترشيح على إزالة البكتيريا الخطيرة من الماء. لا يمكن للبكتيريا أن تمر عبر الشفاطة. وهذا يجعل المياه صالحة للشرب. وبهذه الطريقة، ساعدت شفاطات الترشيح في الوقاية من الأمراض في العديد من البلدان، مما أدى إلى إصابة عدد أقل من الأشخاص بالمرض.

What problems do you think we need to fix on our planet?
Tell me in the comments!

ما هي المشاكل التي تعتقد أننا بحاجة إلى حلها على كوكبنا؟ قل لي في التعليقات!




4   0

Read the blog again. Write the correct invention.

edible cutlery / filter straw / glow-in-the-dark bike path

1. This can help people cycle safely at night. ....

2. This is something that you can eat. ....

3. This can stop people getting sick. ....

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Having takeaway food with friends and family is ....

a) great b) nice c) bad d) easy

2. Plastic cutlery is bad for the ....

a) plant b) planet c) plate d) pilot

3. We usually use plastic cutlery .... , then throw it away.

a) once b) twice c) three times d) four times

4. Plastic doesn't .... , so it stays in the ground for a long time.

a) glow b) remove c) cause d) decompose

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Cyclists - paths - environment - stores - Doctors

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel – it keeps you fit, and it's good for the 1).................... In some countries, people are using a new material for bike 2).................... which glows in the dark. It 3).................... solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the path glows softly. 4).................... can see where they are going in the dark.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Knives, forks and spoons are kinds of edible ....

a) cutlery b) flavors c) poultry d) batteries

2. Plastic is very bad for our..............................

a) market b) planet c) store d) flavors

3. Plastic doesn't .... , so it stays in the ground for a long time.

a) describe b) continue c) decompose d) stay

4. Some .... cutlery comes in different flavors.
   a) possible b) horrible c) impossible d) edible

5. .... is a good way to travel.
   a) Cycling b) Recycling c) Snorkeling d) Diving

6. Cycling keeps you .... and it's good for the environment.
   a) fat b) fit c) filter d) flat

7. Some materials .... solar energy during the day.
   a) stay b) solve c) store d) glow

8. A filter straw removes dangerous .... from water.
   a) sharks b) fish c) plants d) bacteria

9. Filter straws have .... diseases in many countries.
   a) increased b) prevented c) caused d) stayed

10. Cyclists can see where they are going in the glow-in-the-dark bike ..... .
   a) both b) baths c) paths d) roads

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. important - are - filter - I think - straws - the most - invention - .

....

2. disease - that - is - Bacteria - something - can - cause - .

....

3. the world - diseases - important - It's - to prevent - around - .

....

4. usually - plastic - cutlery - use - We - once - .

....

5. can - prevent - Filter - straws - diseases - .

....

5 ... the questions.

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of straw solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water. The bacteria can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have prevented diseases in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

A) Ch... from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

   a) edible cutlery   filter straws   c) water   d) diseases

2. The underlined word "tasty" means ....

   a) noisy   delicious   c) dirty   d) safe

3. A filter straw .... dangerous bacteria.

   a) invents   fixes   c) removes   d) passes

B) Ans... ...tions.

4. What can filter straws prevent?

....

5. How does the water become safe?

....

6 SEVENTY (70) words about:

A great invention

Guiding ...

(smart phone - chat - researches)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



LANGUAGE

Vocabulary

الكلمات

exciting	مثير	science competition	مسابقة علمية
magazine	مجلة	the future	المستقبل
period of time	فترة من الزمن	junk food	طعام غير صحي
Tutankhamun	توت عنخ آمون	time machine	آلة الزمن

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
design	يصمم	designed	designed
wonder	يتعجب	wondered	wondered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
build	يبني	built	built
win	يفوز	won	won
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work in groups	يعمل في مجموعات	make a poster	يقوم بعمل ملصق
let's make ...	هيا نصنع ...	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
look like	يشبه - يبدو	competition entry	مشاركة في المسابقة
lose weight	يفقد وزن	win a prize	يفوز بجائزة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

What is a time machine?

Ms Samira : OK, today we're going to do something exciting. I want you to imagine that there's a science competition. If you wanted to win a science competition, what would you invent and why? You can work in groups to talk about your ideas, then make a poster about your invention.

حسنًا، اليوم سنفعل شيئًا مثيرًا. أريدكم أن تتخيلوا أن هناك مسابقة علمية. إذا أردتم الفوز بالمسابقة العلمية، ...ذا ستخترعون ولماذا؟ يمكنكم العمل في مجموعات للحديث عن أفكاركم، ثم عمل ملصق حول اختراعكم.

Nagwa : Can we look online for ideas?

هل يمكننا البحث عبر الإنترنت عن أفكار؟

Ms Samira : Yes, you can. You can look in magazines, too!

نعم يمكنكم ذلك. يمكنكم البحث في المجلات أيضًا!

Reem, Nagwa, and Lara work in a group.

Reem : Well, if I entered a science competition, I'd design a time machine. I'd love to travel to a different time in history.

حسنًا، إذا شاركت في مسابقة علمية، فسوف أصمم آلة الزمن. أحب السفر إلى زمن مختلف في التاريخ.

Nagwa : That's a great idea. If you designed a time machine, where would you go?

...ذه فكرة عظيمة. إذا قمتي بتصميم آلة الزمن، إلى أين ستذهبي؟

Lara : Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know.

حسنًا، هذا صعب. لا أعرف.

Reem : If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt! I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids.

إذ ذهبت في آلة الزمن، سأذهب إلى مصر القديمة! أود أن أعرف كيف بنوا الأهرامات.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (2)

Nagwa : I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine. I'd go to the future to see what inventions people have!

لن أذهب إلى مصر القديمة إذا ذهبت في آلة الزمن. سأذهب إلى المستقبل لأرى ما هي الاختراعات التي يمتلكها الناس!

Lara : Let's make our competition entry about a time machine, then! If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places. I think that idea would win the competition!

فلنجعل مشاركتنا في المسابقة عن آلة الزمن، إذن! إذا صنعنا آلة الزمن، يمكننا الذهاب إلى العديد من الأماكن المختلفة. أعتقد أن هذه الفكرة ستفوز بالمسابقة!

Nagwa : OK, great. First, let's draw a picture. I wonder what a time machine would look like ...

حسنًا عظيم. أولًا، دعونا نرسم صورة. أتساءل كيف ستبدو آلة الزمن ...

1 Read the dialog again and match.

1) The teacher asks the class to imagine — a) online or in magazines.
2) The children can look for ideas — b) the future.
3) Reem would like to go to — c) there's a science competition.
4) Nagwa would like to go to — d) Ancient Egypt.

1- (   )   2- (   )   3- (   )   4- (   )

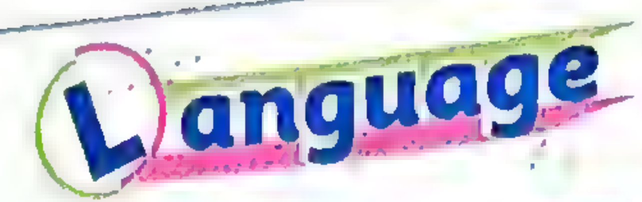
2 Read the dialog again. Ask and answer.

1. Do the children want to visit the same period of time?

....

2. Are the children going to make a real time machine?

....



(If) Second Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الثانية

Usage الاستخدام

1) We use it to talk about a situation that is **imaginary** or **unlikely** to happen
يستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية للتحدث عن موقف خيالي أو من المحتمل عدم حدوثه.

If + past simple , subject + would / could + inf.

e.g. If I **went** in a time machine, **I'd go** to Ancient Egypt.
e.g. If we **made** a time machine, we **could go** to so many different places

Subject + would / could + inf. + if + past simple

e.g. I **wouldn't go** to Ancient Egypt if I **went** in a time machine.
e.g. I **would go** to the future if I **went** in a time machine.

Note:

1- When the "if" clause is second, we don't use a comma.
عندما تكون جملة الشرط هي الثانية لا نستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين.

2- 'd = would

Question السؤال

If + past simple , would + subject + inf. ..?

e.g. If you **had** a lot money, **would** you buy a phone?

Would + subject + inf. + if + past simple ..?

e.g. **Would** you buy a phone if you **had** a lot of money?

Help your child use the second conditional.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you .... to win a competition, you'd work hard.
   a) want b) wants c) wanted d) wanting
2. If I entered a science competition, I .... design a time machine.
   a) will b) would c) can d) may
3. If you .... a time machine, where would you go?
   a) designed b) design c) will design d) designs
4. If I went in a time machine, I .... go to Ancient Egypt.
   a) have b) will c) can d) would
5. If she .... a lot of money, she'd buy a new car.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
6. I .... go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine.
   a) don't b) wouldn't c) am not d) haven't
7. What .... you do if you found a treasure?
   a) could b) can c) will d) are
8. If he .... first, he'd be happy.
   a) come b) comes c) came d) coming

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If he .... (win) the race, I'd be happy.
2. .... (Will) you come to the party if I invited you?
3. What would you .... (did) if you won a gold medal?
4. If she .... (has) free time, she'd visit me.
5. If you .... (get) up early, you could catch the bus.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

invitation - ideas - invention - poster - machine

Samira : Today we're going to do something exciting?
Nagwa : What is it?
Samira : We're going to make a 1) ....
Nagwa : What is it about?
Samira : It's about an 2) ....
Nagwa : Can we look online for 3) ....?
Samira : Yes, and you can choose an invention.
Nagwa : Well. I think it's a good idea to make a time 4) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If I entered a science competition, I .... a robot to clean my room
   a) would design b) designed c) can design d) designs
2. Asser wouldn't use a magazine if he ..... to find ideas for a competition
   a) wants b) want c) wanted d) will want
3. Would you go to Ancient Egypt if you .... a time machine
   a) have b) has c) having d) had
4. If we .... enter the competition, we wouldn't win a prize
   a) didn't b) haven't c) don't d) wouldn't
5. If I .... eating junk food, I would lose some weight
   a) stop b) would stop c) stops d) stopped

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. ideas - can - The children - look for - online - .
....
2. you go - If - in - you traveled - where - would - machine - a time - ?
....
3. machine - a time - the children - Are - going to - make - ?
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) IT LOOKS LIKE A FISH!

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

an angelfish	السمكة القمرية	a coral reef	شعاب مرجانية	a sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية
healthy	صحي	smooth	أملس	pops	صوت فرقعة

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

clicks	أصوات طقطقة	important	هام	interviewer	مُحاور
camera	كاميرا	sea life	الحياة البحرية	mouse	فأر

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

covered in	مغطى بـ	take photos	يلتقط صورًا
a real fish	سمكة حقيقية	type of	نوع من
people with cats	أناس يملكون قطط	a special camera	كاميرا خاصة

Study the following sentences

1. The coral reef shows how healthy the water is. تُظهر الشعاب المرجانية كم أن المياه صحية.
2. The invention is blue and yellow. الاختراع ذو لون أزرق وأصفر.
3. It's covered in smooth material. إنه مغطي بمادة لينة.
4. It makes clicks and pops. تصدر أصوات طقطقة و أصوات فرقعة.

Note:

نستخدم التعبيرات التالية عندما نقول أن شيئًا ما شبيه بشيء آخر أو مختلف عنه.

look like	يشبه	feels like	ملمسه مثل	sounds like	يبدو مثل
smells like	رائحته مثل	tastes like	مذاقه مثل		
similar to	مشابه لـ	different from	مختلف عن		

e.g. The fish camera looks like a fish. تبدو الكاميرا مثل السمكة.

It feels like silk. ملمسها مثل الحرير.

It sounds like a plant. يبدو مثل النبات.

It smells like smoke. رائحته مثل الدخان.

It tastes like honey. مذاقه مثل العسل.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

reefs - sea - did - dive - best

Omar : How are you, Islam?
Islam : I'm fine, thank you.
Omar : Where 1) .... you go last holiday?
Islam : I went to Sharm El-Sheikh.
Omar : Did you 2) .... in the sea?
Islam : Yes, I did.
Omar : What did you like 3) .... ?
Islam : I liked the amazing coral 4) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The coral reef shows how .... the water is.
   a) bad b) healthy c) unhealthy d) dirty
2. The .... is blue and yellow.
   a) invent b) invertor c) invention d) invents
3. It is .... in smooth material.
   a) cover b) covers c) covering d) covered
4. It makes clicks and ....
   a) pops b) clocks c) watches d) cups
5. Where does the camera .... photos?
   a) make b) take c) talk d) invent
6. What type of fish does the camera look .... ?
   a) feel b) hate c) love d) like
7. The camera .... like a real fish.
   a) sounds b) tastes c) smells d) takes
8. The camera .... like a fish. It's smooth.
   a) tastes b) feels c) looks d) makes

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4) THE SCIENCE MUSEUM

Key vocabulary
كلمات أساسية

driverless	ذاتي القيادة - بدون سائق	interactive	تفاعلي
control	يتحكم في	planetarium	القبة السماوية (مرصد فلكي)

Extra vocabulary
كلمات إضافية

amazement	دهشة	exhibition	معرض	driver	سائق
prefer	يفضل	underwater	تحت الماء	guide	مرشد
robots	روبوتات	notice	يلاحظ	curious	فضولي

Definitions
تعريفات

driverless	something without a driver	ذاتي القيادة - بدون سائق
interactive	something you can touch and move	تفاعلي
planetarium	a place where you can see stars and planets	القبة السماوية
control	to direct something or somebody	يتحكم في

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
smile	يبتسم	smiled	smiled
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
fly	يطير	flew	flown
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

school trip	رحلة مدرسية	the science museum	متحف العلوم
onthe bus	في الأتوبيس	do a school project	يقوم بمشروع دراسي
onthe way	في الطريق	fly high up	يطير لأعلى
show them around	يتجول بهم	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
It sounds amazing!	يبدوا مذهلًا!	filled with stars	مملوء بالنجوم
This is awesome!	هذا مذهل!	flying car	السيارة الطائرة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Mazen, Fares, and Wael were excited. It was the day of the school trip to the science museum, and they couldn't wait. They all got on the bus.

كان مازن وفارس ووائل متحمسين. كان ذلك يوم الرحلة المدرسية إلى متحف العلوم، ولم يطيقوا الانتظار. لقد صعدوا جميعًا إلى الحافلة.

"OK, children," said Ms Amal, "there's an exhibition about **driverless** cars at the museum, and we're going to do a school project about it. Driverless cars don't need a driver to **control** them. The project question is: Where would you go if you had a car that could go anywhere? I want you all to think of your best ideas!"

قالت السيدة أمل: "حسناً يا أطفال، هناك معرض حول السيارات ذاتية القيادة في المتحف، وسنقوم بعمل مشروع مدرسي حول هذا الموضوع. السيارات ذاتية القيادة لا تحتاج إلى سائق للتحكم بها. سؤال المشروع هو: إلى أين ستذهب إذا كان لديك سيارة يمكنها الذهاب إلى أي مكان؟ أريدكم جميعًا أن تفكروا في أفضل أفكاركم!

The children chatted on the way. "That's easy," said Wael, "I'd fly high up in the sky, and look down at everything!"
Fares said, "I'd prefer to go underwater, to see the animals that live in the sea."
Mazen was quiet. He thought if he could go anywhere, he wouldn't go up in the sky, or underwater. Where would he go?

تحدث الأطفال في الطريق. قال وائل: "هذا سهل، سأطير عالياً في السماء وأنظر للأسفل إلى كل شيء!" وقال فارس: "أفضل النزول تحت الماء، لرؤية الحيوانات التي تعيش في البحر".

كان مازن هادئًا. لقد اعتقد أنه إذا كان بإمكانه الذهاب إلى أي مكان، فلن يصعد إلى السماء أو تحت الماء. أين سيذهب؟

The science museum was amazing. Mazen, Fares, and Wael were in a group with six other students, and a guide called Mr Kamal. He showed them around and answered lots of questions. Mazen listened as he thought about the project.

كان متحف العلوم مذهلاً. كان مازن وفارس ووائل ضمن مجموعة تضم ستة طلاب آخرين ومرشدًا يُدعى السيد كمال. لقد تجول بهم وأجاب عن الكثير من الأسئلة. استمع مازن وهو يفكر في المشروع.

First, the children went to an **interactive** exhibition about robots. There were lots of experiments to try there. Then they got to the exhibition about driverless cars.

في البداية، ذهب الأطفال إلى معرض تفاعلي حول الروبوتات. كان هناك الكثير من التجارب التي يمكنك تجربتها هناك. ثم وصلوا إلى معرض السيارات ذاتية القيادة.

"I know there are some driverless cars now," said Mr Kamal, "but this one is special. We can't use it in everyday life yet, but in the future, this car will be

able to fly and swim," he said.

قال السيد كمال: "أعلم أن هناك بعض السيارات ذاتية القيادة الآن، لكن هذه السيارة مميزة. لا يمكننا استخدامها في الحياة اليومية بعد، ولكن في المستقبل، ستكون هذه السيارة قادرة على الطيران والسباحة".

"So, I could go into the air!" said Wael. "And I could go under the water," said Fares. "It sounds amazing," said Mazen. But he still didn't know where he would go.

قال وائل "إذن، يمكنني أن انطلق في الهواء!". قال فارس: "ويمكنني النزول تحت الماء". قال مازن: "يبدو الأمر مذهلاً". لكنه ما زال لا يعرف إلى أين سيذهب.

The other students looked at the car and talked about what it could do. Mazen noticed a large door in the exhibition room. He was curious. Mazen spoke to Mr Kamal. "Excuse me, what's through that door?" he asked.

نظر الطلاب الآخرون إلى السيارة وتحدثوا عما يمكن أن تفعله. لاحظ مازن وجود باب كبير في غرفة المعرض. لقد كان فضولياً. تحدث مازن مع السيد كمال وسأله. "عذراً، ماذا يوجد خلال هذا الباب؟".

Mr Kamal smiled. "That's the planetarium. Have you ever been inside a **planetarium**?" "No," said Mazen. Mr Kamal looked at his watch. "We have time. Let's all go and see!" he said.

ابتسم السيد كمال. "هذه هي القبة السماوية. هل سبق لك أن دخلت في داخل القبة السماوية؟" قال مازن: «لا». نظر السيد كمال إلى ساعته. وقال "لدينا الوقت. دعونا نذهب جميعاً ونرى!

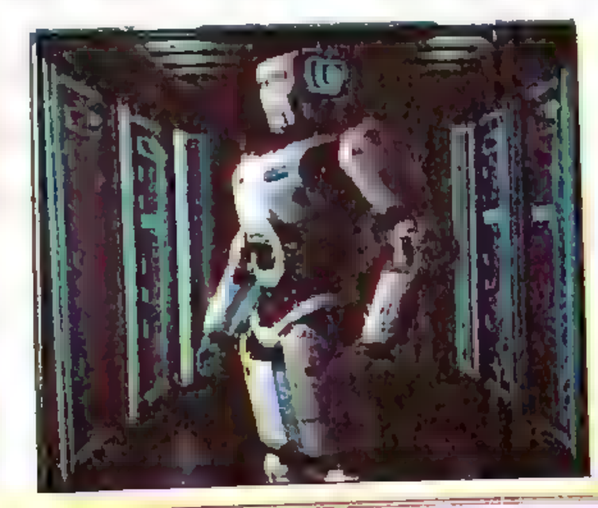
He opened the door, and Mazen and the other students followed him inside. They saw a dark room, filled with stars. Everybody looked in amazement as they saw stars and planets high above them.

فتح الباب، وتبعه مازن والطلاب الآخرون إلى الداخل. رأوا غرفة مظلمة مليئة بالنجوم. بدا الجميع مندهشين عندما رأوا النجوم والكواكب عاليا فوقهم.

"This is awesome!" said Mazen. "Now I know where I'd go. I'd go into space if I had a driverless flying car!"

قال مازن "هذا رائع!". "الآن أعرف إلى أين سأذهب. سأذهب إلى الفضاء لو كان لدي سيارة طائرة بدون سائق!"

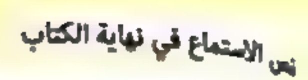




Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was the school trip to the science ....
   a) club b) room c) office d) museum
2. They all got on the ....
   a) bus b) car c) train d) plane
3. There's a/an .... about driverless cars.
   a) party b) lesson c) exhibition d) break
4. They are going to do a school .... about driverless cars.
   a) work b) homework c) lesson d) project

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

moon - underwater - control - sky - quiet

Driverless cars are amazing. They don't need a driver to 1)........................ them. Mazen, Fares and Wael were excited about these cars. Wael would fly high up in the 2)........................ . Fares would go 3)........................ to see animals that live in the sea. Mazen was 4)........................ .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... means something without a driver.
   a) Planetarium b) Interactive c) Driverless d) Control
2. .... means something you can touch and move.
   a) Active b) Passive c) Project d) Interactive
3. We can see stars and planets at the ....
   a) planetarium b) hospital c) planet d) stadium
4. To .... means to direct something or somebody.
   a) drive b) control c) dive d) follow
5. Ali wants to fly into ....
   a) spice b) space c) speed d) straw
6. Where does Mazen decide to go in a driverless .... car?
   a) fly b) flew c) flies d) flying

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mazen, Fares, and Wael were excited. It was the day of the school trip to the science museum. They went there by bus. There was an exhibition about driverless cars. They chatted about all the way to the science museum. It was amazing. The friends were in a group with six other students and a guide called Mr Kamal. He showed them around and answered lots of questions. First, the children went to an interactive exhibition about robots. Then they got to the exhibition about driverless cars. It was a wonderful trip. They enjoyed their time very much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The friends went to the science museum by ....
   a) car b) bus c) train d) plane
2. The underlined word "driverless" means something without a ....
   a) guide b) teacher c) driver d) diver
3. .... was the guide of the trip.
   a) Mazen b) Fares c) Mr. Kamal d) Wael

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did the guide do? ....
5. How was the trip? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. project - is - What - the school - about - ?
   ....
2. planets - They - inside - went - to see - the planetarium - .
   ....
3. a driver - them - Driverless - don't - cars - need - to cotnrol - .
   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A visit to the science museum

Guiding elements:

(driverless cars - exhibition - planetarium)

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

exist	يوجد	mint	نعناع	plow	محراث
toothpaste	معجون أسنان	paste	معجون	engines	محركات
pain	ألم	ink	حبر		

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

sign	علامة	metal	معدني	paper	ورق
ideas	أفكار	machines	آلات	papyrus	ورق بردي
medicine	دواء	tools	أدوات	thick	سميك
human body	جسم الإنسان	difficult	صعب	reeds	نبات القصب
herbs	أعشاب	salt	ملح	oil	زيت
teeth	أسنان	pepper	فلفل	soil	تربة زراعية
events	أحداث	decisions	قرارات	clever	ماهر / ذكي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mix	يخلط	mixed	mixed
record	يسجل	recorded	recorded
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
create	يبتكر	created	created
burn	يحرق	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
turn	يحول / يقلب	turned	turned
pull	يسحب / يجر	pulled	pulled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
tell	يخبر	told	told
dig	يحفر	dug	dug

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

our modern world	عالمنا المعاصر	interested in	مهتم بـ
full of	مملوء بـ	keep clean	يحافظ على نظافة
good at	جيد في	a type of	نوع من
for thousands of years	لآلاف السنين	write down	يدون
come from	يأتي من	made from	مصنوع من

Listen and read.

What did the Ancient Egyptians invent? by Inju

We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've **existed** for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention!

For example, many ideas that are still important in modern medicine come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked, and used herbs to stop **pain** and diseases.

نعتقد أن عالمنا الحديث مليء بالاختراعات الجديدة والمثيرة. ومع ذلك، كان المصريون القدماء جيدين مثل الأشخاص المعاصرين في اختراع أشياء جديدة. وما زلنا نستخدم العديد من الاختراعات المصرية القديمة حتى يومنا هذا. لقد كانت موجودة منذ آلاف السنين. وهذا علامة على اختراع جيد!

على سبيل المثال، العديد من الأفكار التي لا تزال مهمة في الطب الحديث تأتي من هذه العصور. كان المصريون القدماء مهتمين بالصحة والطب مثلنا تماماً. لقد فهموا كيفية عمل جسم الإنسان، واستخدموا الأعشاب لوقف الألم والأمراض.

A) Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean teeth were important to them, so they invented a type of **toothpaste**. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, **mint**, and pepper into a **paste**. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as almost as good as modern toothpaste!

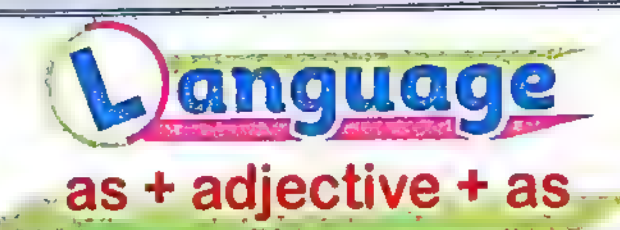
أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على النظافة. وكانت الأسنان النظيفة مهمة بالنسبة لهم، لذلك اخترعوا نوعاً من معجون الأسنان. خلط المصريون القدماء الملح والزهور والنعناع والفلفل في عجينة. كان معجون الأسنان المصري القديم بنفس جودة معجون الأسنان الحديث!

B) In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, record events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and **ink**. Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

في مصر القديمة، كان من المهم تدوين القرارات، وتسجيل الأحداث، وسرد القصص. ولهذا، احتاج الناس إلى الورق والحبر. كان ورق البردي نوعًا من الورق السميك المصنوع من القصب. لم يكن أملسًا مثل الورق الذي نستخدمه اليوم، لكنه غير طريقة تواصل الناس. كما ابتكر المصريون القدماء نوعًا مبكرًا من الحبر. كانوا يحرقون الحطب أو الزيت ويخلطونه بالماء. ثم استخدموا الحبر للكتابة على ورق البردي.

C) The Ancient Egyptians were one of the first groups of people to use a metal **plow**. A plow was used to dig and turn the soil. Later, they used animals to pull this plow. This made plowing the land easier, but it wasn't as easy as it is today. Now, farmers use machines with **engines** to move their plows.

كان المصريون القدماء من أوائل الناس الذين استخدموا المحراث المعدني. تم استخدام المحراث لحفر التربة وتقليبها. وفي وقت لاحق، استخدموا الحيوانات لسحب هذا المحراث. وهذا ما جعل حرث الأرض أسهل، لكنه لم يكن سهلاً كما هو اليوم. أما الآن، فيستخدم المزارعون آلات ذات محركات لتحريك محاريثهم.



as + adjective + as

- **We use as + adjective + as to compare. The affirmative form means that the two things we are comparing the same in some way.**

نستخدم (as + adjective + as) عند المقارنة. ويفيد هذا التركيب في حالة الاثبات التشابه والتماثل في أمر ما بين شيئين.

e.g. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was almost as good as modern toothpaste!

بمعنى أن معجون الأسنان في مصر القديمة كان جيدًا تقريبًا مثل معجون الأسنان الحديث.

not as + adjective + as

- **The negative form means that the two things are different.**

أما في صيغة النفي فمعناه أن الشيئين مختلفان.

e.g. Traveling wasn't as easy as it is today.

لم يكن السفر سهلاً مثل اليوم.

بمعنى أن السفر كان صعبًا، لكنه الآن أسهل.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The inventions in the past were .... exciting as they are today.
   a) as b) is c) so d) than
2. The Ancient Egyptians were as .... as modern people at inventing new things.
   a) better b) good c) best d) the best
3. Ancient Egyptians were as .... in health as we are.
   a) interest b) interests c) interesting d) interested
4. Ancient Egyptians toothpaste was as good .... modern toothpaste.
   a) so b) such c) as d) is
5. Papyrus wasn't as .... the paper we use today.
   a) smooth b) smoother c) smooth as d) smoothest
6. Plowing the land wasn't as .... as it is today.
   a) the easiest b) easier c) easiest d) easy
7. Omar is as clever .... his brother.
   a) so b) than c) then d) as
8. Ink is .... paper.
   a) not useful as b) as useful as c) so useful as d) useful

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Amir is .... (so) tall as Nabil.
2. Osama isn't as .... (shorter) as Ahmed.
3. Is the tiger as .... (more dangerous) as the lion?
4. My book isn't as .... (newer) as my brother's book.
5. I'm as happy .... (then) my friends.

General Activities

من الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our modern world is full of .... new inventions.
   a) boring b) tiring c) exciting d) interesting
2. The Ancient Egyptians were .... at inventing new things.
   a) good b) quiet c) nice d) happy
3. We still use many Ancient Egyptian .... today.
   a) invitations b) inventions c) poster d) tombs
4. Their inventions have .... for thousands of years.
   a) disappeared b) stopped c) went d) existed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

healthy - pain - medicine - useful - health

The Ancient Egyptians were great people. They invented many 1)........ things. Many of their ideas that are still important in modern 2)........................ come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in 3)................ and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked, and used herbs to stop 4)........................ and diseases.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians were .... interested in health as we are.
   a) so b) very c) than d) as
2. Papyrus wasn't as .... as the paper we use today.
   a) softer b) smooth c) faster d) quieter
3. I think ink is as .... as paper.
   a) the most useful b) useful c) most useful d) more useful
4. Toothpaste isn't as .... as herbs.
   a) the oldest b) oldest c) older d) old
5. Ancient Egyptians were as clever .... today's inventors.
   a) as b) so c) such d) than

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, record events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and ink. Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In Ancient Egypt, it was important to .... events.
   a) read b) speak c) record d) repeat
2. To write down decisions people needed .... and ink.
   a) paper b) pepper c) plastic d) wood
3. The underlined word "ink" means something to .... with.
   a) play b) work c) read d) write

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What was papyrus? ....
5. How did the Ancient Egyptians create the early ink? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the past - difficult - Farming - was - very - in - .

....

2. metal - understood - Egyptians - plows - Ancient - how - worked - .

....

3. Egyptians - kind of - Ancient - ink - a new - invented - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Ancient Egyptian inventions

Guiding elements: (toothpaste - ink - plow)

....

....

Lesson (6) WRITING: A SOLUTION TO A PROBLEM

Key vocabulary — لمات أساسية

solution	حل	effect	تأثير	chips	رقائق / مقرمشات
problem	مشكلة	trap	مصيدة / فخ	recycle	يعيد استخدام

Extra vocabulary — لمات إضافية

plastic	بلاستيك	safer	أكثر أمانًا	reasons	أسباب
plastic pollution	تلوث بلاستيكي	sick	مريض	pollution	تلوث
Ocean Net	شبكة المحيط	environment	بيئة	trash	قمامة
seabin	جهاز تنقية المياه	invention	اختراع	straw	ش

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
create	يخلق / يبتكر / يسبب	created	created
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped
sort	يصنف / يفرز	sorted	sorted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
hurt	يؤذي	hurt	hurt
catch	يمسك / يصطاد	caught	caught

Important expressions and prepositions — رات وحروف جر هامة

get into	يصل إلى	wash onto beaches	ل إلى الشواطئ
bad for	ضار لـ	get trapped	اصر / محتجز
good for	جيد لـ	make up	ون من

Help your child identify these words.
طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Lesson (6)

Listen and read.

NEWS



We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the ocean and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad **effect** on sea life: turtles, fish, and jellyfish, for example. Some animals think the plastic is food, and so they eat it and become sick. Some animals get **trapped** in the plastic and are hurt.

Plastic in our water is also bad for the environment. A lot of plastic pollution is washed onto beaches, which looks horrible. If there wasn't so much plastic pollution, the seas and beaches would be safer for the sea animals and for us, too.

نحن نستخدم البلاستيك في حياتنا اليومية: في المنزل، في المدرسة، وفي العمل. يمكن أن يصل البلاستيك إلى المحيط ويسبب الكثير من المشاكل. يمكن أن يكون له تأثير سيء للغاية على الحياة البحرية: السلاحف والأسماك وقناديل البحر، على سبيل المثال. تعتقد بعض الحيوانات أن البلاستيك طعام، فتأكله وتمرض. بعض الحيوانات تحاصر في البلاستيك وتتأذي.

البلاستيك الموجود في مياهنا ضار بالبيئة أيضًا. يتم نقل الكثير من التلوث البلاستيكي إلى الشواطئ، الأمر الذي يبدو فظيعًا. لو لم يكن هناك الكثير من التلوث البلاستيكي، لكانت البحار والشواطئ أكثر أمانًا للحيوانات البحرية ولنا أيضًا.



The Ocean Net

The Ocean Net is a special invention that catches trash in the sea. It is a great solution to the problem of plastic in the oceans. This is for a number of reasons. Firstly, it helps sea life. It stops plastic from getting into the sea so that animals, fish, and sea birds are not hurt.

تعد شبكة المحيط اختراعا خاصا يلتقط القمامة في البحر. إنه حل رائع لمشكلة البلاستيك في المحيطات. هذا لعدد من الأسباب. أولاً، فهو يساعد الحياة البحرية. يمنع دخول البلاستيك إلى البحر حتى لا تتأذى الحيوانات والأسماك والطيور البحرية.

Secondly, it's also good for the environment. It catches plastic objects: drink bottles, **chip** bags, and plastic straws. These plastic objects can then be sorted and **recycled**. This means that we use less plastic.

As you can see, the Ocean Net is a great invention!

ثانيا، إنه مفيد للبيئة أيضا. فهو يلتقط الأشياء البلاستيكية: زجاجات الشرب، وأكياس الرقائق، والمصاصات البلاستيكية. ويمكن بعد ذلك فرز هذه الأشياء البلاستيكية وإعادة تدويرها. وهذا يعني أننا نستخدم كميات أقل من البلاستيك.

وكما ترون، فإن شبكة المحيط اختراع عظيم!

Tip?

When you write a solution to a problem, you need to include reasons.

عندما تكتب حلاً لمشكلة ما، عليك أن تذكر الأسباب.

Your reasons show the reader why your solution is a good one.

توضح أسبابك للقارئ سبب كون الحل الذي تقدمه جيدًا.

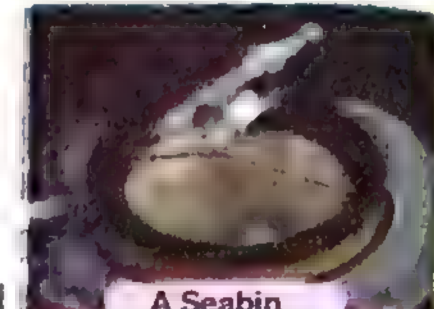
Introduce your reasons with Firstly, Secondly, etc.

اذكر أسبابك مستخدمًا الكلمات أولاً وثانيًا، الخ.

Other phrases you can use are: it helps, it stops, it's good for...

العبارات الأخرى التي يمكنك استخدامها هي: إنه يساعد، إنه يمنع، إنه مفيد لـ ...

A seabin


A Seabin

The seabin is an interesting solution that catches trash in the sea. It's made up of a filter, pump, and bucket. Firstly, it helps remove many things from the ocean, for example, plastic, paper, and cardboard. Secondly, it can remove fuel and oil from the water. Finally, it's good for making the water cleaner and safer for sea life.

Listen and read.

Problem


Special floor tiles

Many countries still make electricity using fossil fuels like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, like methane. However, greenhouse gases are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide cause climate change and air pollution.

لا تزال العديد من البلدان تنتج الكهرباء باستخدام الوقود الحفري مثل الفحم والنفط والغاز. يؤدي حرق الوقود الحفري إلى توليد ثاني أكسيد الكربون والغازات الدفيئة الأخرى، مثل الميثان. ومع ذلك، فإن الغازات الدفيئة ضارة بالبيئة. تتسبب المستويات العالية من الغازات الدفيئة مثل ثاني أكسيد الكربون في تغير المناخ وتلوث الهواء.

Solution

A company has created special floor tiles which create energy when people walk on them. The energy is turned into electricity and stored. Now the tiles are used in 36 countries around the world to create energy in different places: on train platforms, and in places where people play football. As a result, the energy is clean, it's interactive, and it's fun to create!

قامت إحدى الشركات بإنشاء بلاطات خاصة للأرضيات تولد الطاقة عندما يمشي الناس عليها. يتم تحويل الطاقة إلى كهرباء وتخزينها. يتم الآن استخدام البلاط في ٣٦ دولة حول العالم لتوليد الطاقة في أماكن مختلفة: على منصات القطارات، وفي الأماكن التي يلعب فيها الناس كرة القدم. ونتيجة لذلك، تصبح الطاقة نظيفة، وتفاعلية، ومن الممتع انتجاها!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We use .... in our everyday lives.
   a) plants b) plastic c) birds d) clothes
2. Plastic can get into the .... and create lots of problems.
   a) ocean b) land c) sea d) river
3. Plastic can have a very bad .... on sea life.
   a) affect b) stop c) effect d) help
4. Some animals get .... in the plastic and are hurt.
   a) worked b) played c) washed d) trapped

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

beaches - net - stops - recycled - trapped

Plastic in our oceans is bad because animals sometimes eat the plastic or get 1)................ in it. It also causes pollution on 2)................. The Ocean Net is good because it 3)........................ plastic from getting into the sea. The plastic in the net can be sorted and 4)........................ .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I think I'm suffering from the .... of too little sleep.
   a) effect b) help c) stop d) sort
2. The rat got its foot caught in a ....
   a) tap b) map c) trap d) cop
3. We must .... plastic and paper.
   a) recycle b) eat c) throw d) play
4. I .... my back when I fell off the horse.
   a) took b) saw c) hurt d) made
5. The seabin is made .... of a filter, pump, and bucket.
   a) of b) in c) up d) at

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Ocean Net is a special invention that catches trash in the sea. It is a great solution to the problem of plastic in the oceans. This is for a number of reasons. Firstly, it helps sea life. It stops plastic from getting into the sea so that animals, fish, and sea birds are not hurt. Secondly, it's also good for the environment. It catches plastic objects: drink bottles, chip bags, and plastic straws. These plastic objects can then be sorted and recycled. This means that we use less plastic. As you can see, the Ocean Net is a great invention!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "the ....".
   a) seabin b) Ocean Net c) plastic d) fish
2. The Ocean Net catches .... in the sea.
   a) trash b) fish c) sharks d) turtles
3. The underlined word "recycle" means ....
   a) rewrite b) reuse c) replace d) replay

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why is the Ocean Net important? ....
5. How does the Ocean Net help sea life? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. use - in - We - plastic - everyday - lives - our - .

....

2. is - The seabin - a - solution - great - .

....

3. bad - is - Plastic - for - environment - the - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

The Ocean Net

Guiding elements:

(invention - trash - stop)

....

....

Lesson (7)

STORY: FEEDING THE BIRDS

Key vocabulary




birdfeeder
وعاء تغذية الطيور


birdseed
طعام الطيور


clothes pins
مشابك ملابس


gatepost
عمود / سارية البوابة


knot
عقدة


loop
حلقة / دائرة


rope
حبل

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

yard	فناء	difficult	صعب	branch	فرع
neighbor	جار	ideas	أفكار	attach	يربط
slowly	ببطء	sink	حوض	metal gate	بوابة معدنية
stick	عصا	next door	البيت المجاور	pull	يسحب
below	أسفل	top	أعلى	rest	يستريح

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look out of	ينظر من	for a while	لفترة من الوقت
decide to	يقرر أن	one end of	طرف
pick up	يلتقط	high up	عاليًا
able to	قادر على	close to	قريب من

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Feeding the birds

إطعام الطيور



One morning, Rania was in her yard. She could hear her neighbor, Mr Hamdy. Every morning, he went outside and filled his **birdfeeders**. Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds.

في صباح أحد الأيام، كانت رانيا في فناء منزلها. كانت تسمع صوت جارها السيد حمدي. كان يخرج كل صباح ويملأ أوعية تغذية الطيور الخاصة به. ثم يجلس على كرسي ويراقب الطيور.

But that day, something was different. He was outside, but it sounded like he was walking slowly.
Rania went and asked her mom, "Is Mr Hamdy OK? He isn't feeding the birds."

لكن في ذلك اليوم، كان هناك شيء مختلف. لقد كان بالخارج، ولكن بدا وكأنه كان يمشي ببطء. ذهبت رانيا وسألت والدتها: هل السيد حمدي بخير؟ إنه لا يطعم الطيور."

"Mr Hamdy hurt his leg," said Mom. "He's OK, but he needs to walk with a stick. I think it's difficult for him to fill his birdfeeders. I'm making some koshari for his lunch. Can you take it to him later?"

قالت الأم: "السيد حمدي أصيب في ساقه "إنه بخير، لكنه يحتاج إلى المشي بالعصا. أعتقد أنه من الصعب عليه ملء أوعية تغذية الطيور الخاصة به. أقوم بإعداد بعض الكشري لغداءه. هل يمكنك أن تأخذيه إليه لاحقًا؟"

"Of course," said Rania. She thought about Mr Hamdy. He loved feeding the birds, and she was sad that he couldn't. Rania looked out of the window. She decided to help Mr Hamdy. She got some pencils and paper, and sat down at her desk to draw her ideas.

قالت رانيا: "بالطبع". فكرت في السيد حمدي. كان يحب إطعام الطيور، وكانت حزينة لأنه لم يستطع ذلك. نظرت رانيا من النافذة. قررت مساعدة السيد حمدي. أحضرت بعض الأقلام والأوراق، وجلست على مكتبها لترسم أفكارها.

A few hours later, Mom called Rania. "Mr Hamdy's koshari is ready," she said. Rania picked up her paper. She asked, "Have we got any **rope** and **clothes pins**?" "What for?" asked Mom. "To make something," Rania replied.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Mom said, "There are clothes pins under the sink and rope in the garage. Do you need any help?"

"No, thanks, I know what to do," said Rania. She got the rope, the clothes pins, and the koshari, and went next door.

وبعد ساعات قليلة، نادت الأم على رانيا. قالت: "كشري السيد حمدي جاهز". التقطت رانيا ورقتها. وسألت: هل عندنا حبل ومشبك ملابس؟" سألت الأم "لأي غرض؟". أجابت رانيا: "لصنع شيء ما". قالت الأم: "هناك مشابك ملابس تحت الحوض وحبل في المرآب. هل تحتاجين إلى مساعدة؟" قالت رانيا: "لا، شكرًا، أعرف ما يجب فعله". أخذت الحبل، ومشابك الملابس، والكشري، وذهبت إلى البيت المجاور.

"I'm sorry you hurt your leg," she said. "Mom made you some lunch. Did you feed the birds today?" "Thank you," said Mr Hamdy. "I won't be able to walk very well for a while. So, I couldn't feed the birds today. I'm worried that they might go somewhere else for food." "May I make something in your yard?" asked Rania. "I want to help feed the birds." "Of course, dear," he said.

قالت: "أنا آسفة لأن ساقك أصيب". "أمي أعدت لك بعض الغداء. هل أطعمت الطيور اليوم؟" قال السيد حمدي: "شكرًا لك". "لن أتمكن من المشي بشكل جيد لفترة من الوقت. لذلك لم أتمكن من إطعام الطيور اليوم. أنا قلق من أنهم قد يذهبون إلى مكان آخر لتناول الطعام. سألت رانيا "هل يمكنني صنع شيء ما في حديقتك؟". "أريد أن أساعد في إطعام الطيور." قال: "بالطبع يا عزيزتي".

Outside, Rania threw one end of the rope over the branch of a tree. She took two birdfeeders from the tree, and attached them to the rope with clothes pins. Next to Mr Hamdy's chair, there was a metal gate. Rania put the rope around the **gatepost**, and tied a **knot** to make one big **loop**. She pulled the rope, first the part above the knot, and then the part below it. The birdfeeders moved towards her when she pulled the top part. "It works!" she said. She called Mr Hamdy. "Please, sit here," she said. "This looks interesting, Rania," said Mr Hamdy, smiling.

وفي الخارج، ألقت رانيا أحد طرفي الحبل على غصن شجرة. أخذت اثنين من أوعية تغذية الطيور من الشجرة، وربطتهما بالحبل باستخدام مشابك الملابس. بجوار كرسي السيد حمدي، كانت هناك بوابة معدنية. وضعت رانيا الحبل حول عمود البوابة، وعقدت عقدة لعمل حلقة واحدة كبيرة. قامت بسحب الحبل، أولاً الجزء الذي فوق العقدة، ثم الجزء الذي تحتها. تحركت أوعية تغذية الطيور نحوها عندما سحبت الجزء العلوي. قالت "إنها تعمل!" نادت السيد حمدي وقالت: "من فضلك، اجلس هنا". قال السيد حمدي مبتسماً: "يبدو هذا مثيراً للاهتمام يا رانيا".

She gave him some **birdseed** and showed him where to pull on the rope to make the birdfeeders move. Mr Hamdy smiled as he sat in the sun and filled the birdfeeders. When they were ready, Rania helped him pull the rope the other way. The birdfeeders went high up, close to the branches of the tree. The birds flew onto the branches and started to eat. "Thank you, Rania," he said. "Your invention is fantastic! I can rest and still enjoy the birds."

أعطته بعض البذور للطيور وبينت له مكان سحب الحبل لتحريك أوعية تغذية الطيور. ابتسم السيد حمدي وهو يجلس في الشمس وملأ أوعية تغذية الطيور. وعندما أصبحوا جاهزين، ساعدته رانيا في سحب الحبل في الاتجاه الآخر. صعدت أوعية الطيور إلى أعلى، بالقرب من أغصان الشجرة. طارت الطيور إلى الأغصان وبدأت في الأكل. قال: "شكرًا لك يا رانيا اختراعك رائع! يمكنني الراحة والاستمتاع بالطيور".

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. One morning, Rania was in her ....
   a) school b) yard c) bed d) farm
2. She could hear her ...., Mr Hamdy.
   a) neighbor b) brother c) father d) uncle
3. Every morning, he went outside and filled his ....
   a) pot b) dish c) birdfeeders d) bottle
4. He sat on a chair and watched the ....
   a) fish b) cows c) birds d) sheep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mr Hamdy put .... into the birdfeeders.
   a) birdseed b) books c) water d) plants
2. Rania tied a .... in the rope. This made a loop.
   a) knee b) knot c) clothes pin d) birdseed
3. My mother uses plastic ..... for attaching wet clothes to the clothes line.
   a) clothes pins b) loop c) rope d) knot
4. My brother put food for birds in the ....
   a) birdfeeders b) gateposts c) birdseed d) rope
5. He fell and .... his leg.
   a) put b) hurt c) heart d) caught

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - using - **What** - Mr Hamdy - help - to - him - walk - ?

....

2. the gatepost - **Rania** - put - rope - the - around - .

....

3. does - and - **Why** - Rania - use - pencils - paper - ?

....

4. are - under - clothes pins - sink - **There** - the - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

Filter straws

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of straw solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water. The bacteria can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have prevented diseases in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

Writing in Ancient Egypt

In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, record events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and ink. Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

- Write an email.

The Seabin Invention

From	:	Ali@gmail.com
To	:	Huda@gmail.com
Subject	:	The seabin invention

Dear Huda,

How are you? I'm writing to tell you about a solution to the problem of trash in the sea. The seabin is an interesting solution that catches trash in the sea. It's made up of a filter, pump, and bucket. Firstly, it helps remove many things from the ocean, for example, plastic, paper, and cardboard. Secondly, it also helps remove fuel and oil from the water and this makes the water cleaner and safer for sea life.

Yours,

Ali

Send | A | Saved

Review on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

edible cutlery	أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل	angelfish	السمكة القمرية	plow	محراث
bike path	مسار دراجات	healthy	صحي	engines	محركات
decompose	يتحلل	a coral reef	شعاب مرجانية	solution	حل
prevent	يمنع	smooth	أملس	problem	مشكلة
glow-in-the-dark	منير في الظلام	a sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	effect	تأثير
filter straw	شفاطة لتنقية المياه	pops	أصوات فرقعة	trap	مصيدة / فخ
Tutankhamun	توت عنخ آمون	driverless	ذاتي القيادة	bacteria	بكتيريا
competition	مسابقة	control	يتحكم	knot	عقدة
recycle	يعيد استخدام	interactive	تفاعلي	loop	حلقة
the future	المستقبل	planetarium	القبة السماوية	rope	حبل
junk food	طعام غير صحي	exist	يوجد	exciting	مثير
king	ملك	toothpaste	معجون أسنان	magazine	مجلة
chips	رقائق / مقرمشات	pain	ألم	period	فترة
birdfeeder	وعاء تغذية الطيور	mint	نعناع	diseases	أمراض
birdseed	طعام الطيور	paste	معجون	ink	حبر
clothes pins	مشابك ملابس	gatepost	سارية البوابة	safe	آمن
inventions	اختراعات	knives	سكاكين	flour	دقيق
blog	مدونة	spoons	ملاعق	rice	أرز
sea life	الحياة البحرية	plastic	بلاستيك	camera	كاميرا
cyclists	راكبي الدراجات	tasty	لذيذ	important	هام
dangerous	خطير	comments	تعليقات	ocean	محيط
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	material	مادة خام	mouse	فأر
environment	البيئة	interviewer	مُحاوِر	planet	كوكب

Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة.



(If) Second Conditional

Usage الاستخدام

1) We use it to talk about a situation that is imaginary or unlikely to happen.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية للتحدث عن موقف خيالي أو من المحتمل عدم حدوثه.

If + past simple , subject + would / could + inf.

e.g. If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt.

Subject + would / could + inf. + if + past simple

e.g. I would go to the future if I went on a time machine.

Question السؤال

If + past simple , would + subject + inf. ..?

e.g. If you had a lot money, would you buy a phone?

Would + subject + inf. + if + past simple ..?

e.g. Would you buy a phone if you had a lot of money?

as + adjective + as

- We use as + adjective + as to compare. The affirmative form means that the two things we are comparing the same in some way.

نستخدم (as + adjective + as) عند المقارنة. ويفيد هذا التركيب في حالة الأثبات التشابه والتماثل في أمر ما بين شيئين.

e.g. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was almost as good as modern toothpaste!

يمعنى أن معجون الأسنان في مصر القديمة كان جيدًا تقريبًا مثل معجون الأسنان الحديث.

not as + adjective + as

- The negative form means that the two things are different.

أما في صيغة النفي فمعناه أن الشيئين مختلفان.

e.g. Traveling wasn't as easy as it is today.

لم يكن السفر سهلاً مثل اليوم.

يمعنى أن السفر كان صعبًا، لكنه الآن أسهل.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

بكتيريا .... يمنع ....
أمراض .... مسار الدراجات ....
يتحلل .... أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل ....

Lesson (2)

مسابقة .... مثير ....
المستقبل .... مجلة ....
طعام غير صحي .... فترة ....
ملك .... توت عنخ آمون ....

Lesson (3)

سلحفاة بحرية .... السمكة القمرية ....
شعاب مرجانية .... أملس ....

Lesson (4)

تفاعلي .... ذاتي القيادة ....
القبة السماوية .... يتحكم ....
.... تحت الماء ....

Lesson (5)

محراث .... نعناع ....
محركات .... معجون ....
ألم .... حبر ....
معجون أسنان .... يوجد ....

Lesson (6)

مصيدة / فخ .... حل ....
يعيد تدوير .... مشكلة ....

Lesson (7)

وعاء تغذية الطيور .... عقدة ....
طعام الطيور .... حلقة ....
مشابك ملابس .... حبل ....
سارية البوابة .... يربط ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep ....
   a) clean b) dirty c) ugly d) lazy
2. They invented a type of ....
   a) ink b) toothpaste c) medicine d) bike
3. They mixed salt, flowers, ... and pepper into a paste.
   a) onions b) mint c) carrots d) potatoes
4. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as .... as modern toothpaste.
   a) bad b) well c) ugly d) good

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

straw - bacteria - prevented - filter - drinking

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of 1)........... solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water. The 2)........... can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, 3)........... straws have 4)........... diseases in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've existed for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention! For example, many ideas that are still important in modern medicine come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked, and used herbs to stop pain and diseases.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "modern" is ....
   a) old b) new c) tall d) good
2. The main idea of the text is about "Ancient Egyptian ....".
   a) homes b) inventions c) food d) clothes
3. The Ancient Egyptian inventions have .... for thousands of years.
   a) ended b) closed c) stopped d) existed

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did the Ancient Egyptians use to stop pain? ....
5. Were the Ancient Egyptian inventions important ? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. "What shall we do? I'm really worried," said Bassant. (..................)
2. "Let's go and talk to Mr Madhat to see if that's OK," said Nadine. (..................)
3. Bassant and Nadine found Mrs Basma. (..................)
4. The older students came to school and started looking around. (..................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

5. Why were the newspaper team happy but nervous, too? ....
6. Who helped the children to put the articles on the school website? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If I .... in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2. If we made a time machine, we .... to different places.
   a) could go b) go c) will go d) went
3. If you .... in time machine, where would you go?
   a) travel b) travels c) traveled d) traveling
4. I think ink is .... useful as paper.
   a) more b) less c) as d) much
5. Ali is as .... as Hani.
   a) the fastest b) faster c) fastest d) fast
6. Math is not as .... as English.
   a) easier b) the easiest c) easiest d) easy

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. does - the - Where - camera - photos - take - ?

....

2. children - The - went - the planetarium - inside - .

....

3. understood - how - Ancient Egyptians - worked - the - brain - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Plastic pollution

Guiding elements:

(sea - trash - problems - environment)

....

....



I can do it!

In this unit, the students will ...

- read and work out meaning of new words from context.
- understand and use the present continuous for future.
- ask for and give advice.
- listen for details and take notes.
- understand the writer's opinion in a text.
- understand and use commands and requests in reported speech.
- write a personal statement.
- understand the main ideas in summaries.

WHAT WOULD YOU DO?

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

afraid	خائف	anxious about	قلق بشأن
determined	عازم / مصمم	embarrassed about	محرج - مرتبك بشأن
independent	مستقل	patient	صبور

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

quiet	هادئ	sad	حزين
space	مساحة / فراغ	movie theater	سينما
movie	فيلم	instead	بدلًا (من)
busy	مشغول	presentation	عرض تقديمي
aquarium	معرض أحياء مائية	scary	مُخيف
silly	سخيف	solutions	حلول
worried	قلق (يشعر بالقلق)	nervous	متوتر / عصبي
calmly	بهدوء	frightened	مرعوب
results	نتائج	agree x disagree	يوافق x لا يوافق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
prepare	يُجهز / يُعد	prepared	prepared
practice	يتدرب	practiced	practiced
hope	يأمل / يتمنى	hoped	hoped
explain	يوضح / يفسر	explained	explained
try	يحاول	tried	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
tell	يُخبر	told	told
stick	يلصق	stuck	stuck
find	يجد	found	found
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find out	يكتشف / يعرف	wait for	ينتظر (شخص / شئ)
look for	يبحث عن	make lots of notes	يدون الكثير من الملاحظات
try hard	يحاول بجد	make them happy	يجعلهم سعداء
You know your own mind.			أنت تعرف ما تريد.

Definitions تعريفات

independent	happy to do something on your own	مستقل
determined	believing that you will do or finish something	مُصمم / عازم
patient	able to wait calmly for a long time	صبور
afraid	scared or frightened of something	خائف
anxious	worried or nervous about something	قلق / متوتر
embarrassed	worried about what other people think, or feeling bad about something you did or said	مُحرج / مرتبك

Listen and read.



What would you do?

1- Imagine your friend was quiet and sad for a week. What would you do?
تخيل أن صديقك ظل هادئاً وحزيناً لمدة أسبوع. ماذا كنت ستفعل؟

a. Write a text message or email to say that you are there if they want to talk.
اكتب رسالة نصية أو بريدًا إلكترونيًا لتخبر أنك موجود إذا أراد التحدث.

b. Ask questions to find out what's wrong. اطرح الأسئلة لمعرفة المشكلة.

c. Give them some space, and wait for them to tell you the problem.
امنحه بعض المساحة، وانتظر حتى يخبرك بالمشكلة.

2- Imagine your friend wanted to go to the movie theater the day before your exam. What would you do?
تخيل أن صديقك أراد الذهاب إلى السينما في اليوم السابق لامتحانك. ماذا كنت ستفعل؟

a. Say no, but look for a movie you can go to next weekend instead.
تقول لا، ولكن ابحث عن فيلم يمكنك الذهاب إليه في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع القادمة بدلاً من ذلك.

b. Do lots of study now, so you can go out before the exam.
تقوم بالكثير من المذاكرة الآن، حتى تتمكن من الخروج قبل الامتحان.

c. Say that you're too busy. تقول إنك مشغول جدًا.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

3- Imagine you were anxious about giving a presentation in class. How would you prepare?

٣- تخيل أنك قلق بشأن تقديم عرض تقديمي في الفصل. كيف تستعد؟

a. Ask somebody to listen to you practice and give you advice.

نطلب من شخص ما أن يستمع إليك أثناء التدريب ويقدم لك النصيحة.

b. Watch videos of other people giving presentations to get some advice.

تشاهد مقاطع فيديو لأشخاص آخرين يقدمون عروضًا تقديمية للحصول على بعض النصائح.

c. Make lots of notes and stick them around your house to help you learn it.

تقوم بتدوين الكثير من الملاحظات والصقها في أنحاء منزلك لتساعدك على تعلمها.

4- Imagine your friend wanted to visit the aquarium, but you were afraid of fish. What would you do?

4- تخيل أن صديقك أراد زيارة معرض الأحياء المائية ولكنك تخاف من الأسماك. ماذا ستفعل؟

a. Go with them, and hope the fish aren't as scary as you imagine!

تذهب معهم، وتأمل ألا تكون الأسماك مخيفة كما تتخيل!

b. Say no, but don't tell them why. You don't want to look silly.

تقول لا، لكن لا تخبرهم بالسبب. أنت لا تريد أن تبدو سخيفًا.

c. Explain that you don't like fish, but you'd like to do something else.

تشرح أنك لا تحب الأسماك، ولكنك ترغب في القيام بشيء آخر.

Your results!

Mostly a: You always try hard, and you're a good friend. You like to be with other people, and you want to make them happy.

في الغالب أ: أنت دائمًا تحاول جاهدًا، وأنت صديق جيد. تحب أن تكون مع الآخرين، وتريد أن تجعلهم سعداء.

Mostly b: You are a **determined** person. You work hard to find solutions to problems, and you can feel **embarrassed** easily.

في الغالب ب: أنت شخص حازم. تعمل بجد لإيجاد حلول للمشاكل، ومن الممكن أن تشعر بالإحراج بسهولة.

Mostly c: You're **patient** and **independent** – you know your own mind. You're a good friend, and you're kind to yourself as well.

في الغالب ج: أنت صبور ومستقل، وتعرف ما تريد. أنت صديق جيد، وأنت لطيف مع نفسك أيضًا.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I visited Anas last ....
   a) night   b) week   c) month   d) year
2. He was quiet and ....
   a) noisy   b) happy   c) sad   d) delighted
3. I told Anas some .... to make him happy.
   a) stories   b) jokes   c) plays   d) poems
4. I decided to give him some ....
   a) sugar   b) tools   c) space   d) candies

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

patient - looking - answers - independent - box

Nada got mostly C 1) .... This means that she is 2) .... and 3) .... However, Lina disagrees. She says that Nada doesn't like 4) .... for things. Nada agrees with Lina.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If your friend is sad, give him some .... and wait for him to talk.
   a) space   b) line   c) period   d) sentence
2. Ask questions to find .... what's wrong.
   a) in   b) from   c) out   d) down
3. Say no, but look .... a movie you can go to next weekend instead.
   a) out   b) for   c) in   d) at
4. Do lots .... study now.
   a) of   b) in   c) out   d) from
5. " .... " means happy to do something on your own.
   a) Anxious   b) Afraid   c) Independent   d) Patient

6. You work .... to find solutions to problems.
   a) hardly   b) easily   c) hard   d) quietly
7. When you believe that you will do or finish something, it means you are ....
   a) patient   b) determined   c) afraid   d) embarrassed
8. ....lots of notes and stick them around your house to help you learn it.
   a) Make   b) Do   c) Have   d) Play
9. If you are ...., then you are scared or frightened of something.
   a) quiet   b) happy   c) calm   d) afraid
10. "..............."means you are worried about what other think or feeling bad about something you did or said.
   a) Determined   b) Embarrassed   c) Afraid   d) Patient
11. To be able to wait calmly for a long time means you are ....
   a) hard   b) happy   c) good   d) patient
12. If you are worried or nervous about something, this means you are ....
   a) afraid   b) anxious   c) quiet   d) sad

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. likes - solutions - She - to - problems - find - out - to - .

....

2. that - helps - always - He - Lina - says - him - .

....

3. silly - don't - You - want - look - to - .

....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My friend's problem

Guiding elements:

(quiet and sad - ask questions - laugh - space)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

store	متجر	excited	متحمس
awesome	رائع	meal	وجبة
auntie	عمة / خالة	cookies	كعك محلي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
email	يرسل بريد إلكتروني	emailed	emailed
cook	يطبخ	cooked	cooked
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
stay	يبقى / يمكث	stayed	stayed
paint	يدهن	painted	painted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
take	يأخذ / يلتقط	took	taken
show	يعرض / يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
come	يأتي	came	come
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It will be a surprise!	سوف تكون مفاجأة!	go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة
live by	يعيش بجوار	take photos	يلتقط صور فوتوغرافية
draw pictures	يرسم صورًا	look after	يعتني بـ / يرعى
stay at home	يبقى بالمنزل	have a party	يقيم حفلة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Hello Youssef,

How are you? The last time you emailed, you said your grandma was sick.

I hope she's better now.

My parents are very busy this week, so I'm making dinner this evening.

My sisters are going to the store this afternoon to buy the food we need.

Then, at five o'clock, I'm cooking my parents' favorite meal. It's hawawshi! It will be a surprise. I hope they like it! I'm helping my little brother with his homework tomorrow, too. My dad usually does that, but I really like doing more to help at home.

What are you doing next week? And are you going on vacation this summer?

Write soon,

Yaseen

مرحبًا يوسف،

كيف حالك؟ آخر مرة قمت بإرسال بريد إلكتروني، قلت أن جدتك كانت مريضة.

آمل أن تكون أفضل الآن. والداي مشغولان للغاية هذا الأسبوع، لذا سأقوم بإعداد العشاء هذا المساء. ستذهب أخواتي إلى المتجر بعد ظهر هذا اليوم لشراء الطعام الذي نحتاجه. ثم، في الساعة الخامسة، سأقوم بطهي الوجبة المفضلة لوالدي. إنه الحواوشي! ستكون مفاجأة. أتمنى أن يحبوه! سأساعد أخي الصغير في واجباته المدرسية غدًا أيضًا. والدي يفعل ذلك عادة، لكني أحب فعل المزيد للمساعدة في المنزل.

ماذا ستفعل في الأسبوع القادم؟ وهل ستذهب في إجازة هذا الصيف؟

اكتب قريبًا،

ياسين

Hi Yaseen!

Thanks for your email, and I hope the cooking is fun! Thank you for asking about my grandma. She's OK, but I'm doing her shopping tomorrow because she can't walk far yet.

I'm very excited because I'm staying with my cousins next week, just for the weekend. I'm helping them to paint their boat – it's very old. They live by the sea, so it will be awesome! I'll take lots of photos and show them to you.

We aren't going on vacation this summer. Our cousins are coming here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city. Are you going anywhere this summer?

See you soon,

Youssef

مرحبًا ياسين!

شكرًا على بريدك الإلكتروني، وآمل أن يكون الطبخ ممتعًا! شكرًا لسؤالك عن جدتي. إنها بخير، لكنني سأقوم بالتسوق لها غدًا لأنها لا تستطيع المشي بعيدًا بعد.

أنا متحمس للغاية لأنني سأقيم مع أبناء عمومتي الأسبوع المقبل، فقط لقضاء عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. سوف أساعدهم في طلاء قاربهم، فهو قديم جدًا. إنهم يعيشون بجانب البحر، لذلك سيكون الأمر رائعًا! سألتقط الكثير من الصور وأعرضها لك.

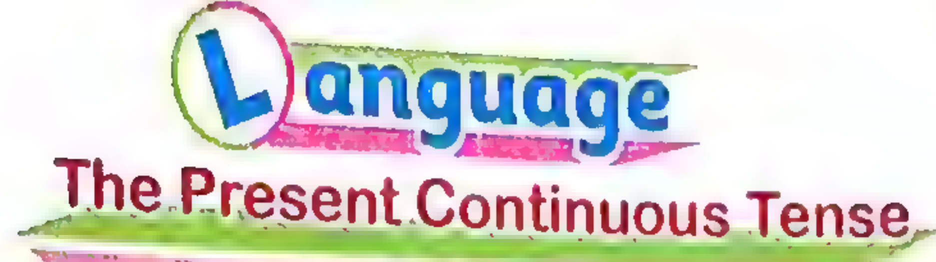
لن نذهب في إجازة هذا الصيف. سيأتي أبناء عمومتنا إلى هنا لزيارتنا، لذلك سنأخذهم إلى العديد من الأماكن المختلفة في المدينة. هل ستذهب إلى أي مكان هذا الصيف؟

أراك قريبًا،

يوسف

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

Subject + (am / is / are) + (v + ing)

e.g. I'm **walking** to school. - She **is reading** a book.

Usage الاستخدام

- To express an action that is happening now. للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.

e.g. They **are watching** TV **now**.

Listen!	استمع!	today	اليوم	at present	في الوقت الحاضر
Look!	انظر!	now	الآن	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة

e.g. **Listen!** The girl is singing.

- We can also use it to talk about arrangements in the future. يمكننا أيضا استخدامه للحديث عن الترتيبات في المستقبل.

e.g. **I'm helping** my little brother with his homework tomorrow.

- We often use a time phrase to show when this will happen. Time phrases include: غالبًا ما نستخدم عبارة زمنية لإظهار متى سيحدث هذا. تشمل العبارات الزمنية ما يلي:

Later	فيما بعد	this evening	هذا المساء	next week	الأسبوع القادم
next month	الشهر القادم	tomorrow	غدًا	at five o'clock	الساعة الخامسة

e.g. Heba is going on vacation **next week**.

Negative النفي

Subject + (am / is / are) + not + (v + ing)

e.g. I **am not collecting** eggs.

Yes / No question

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. **Is** he **walking** to school?
- Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

Are + (we / you / they / a plural noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. **Are** they **watching** a TV program?
- Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

Help your child use the present continuous for future.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل.

Wh question

Q.W + (is / are) + subject + (v + ing)...?

e.g. What is he doing now? - He is playing sports.
What are you doing at the moment? - I'm studying my lessons.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... Yaseen's sisters visiting the store now?
   a) Am b) Is c) Are d) Can
2. When is he .... the meal?
   a) cook b) cooking c) cooks d) cooked
3. Is Youssef .... his cousins now?
   a) visited b) visits c) visit d) visiting
4. When .... she helping to paint a boat?
   a) are b) were c) was d) is
5. Hana .... going on vacation next week. She's staying at home.
   a) doesn't b) didn't c) isn't d) wasn't
6. I'm .... cookies for my friend later.
   a) baking b) bake c) baked d) bakes
7. We're helping our parents ....
   a) yesterday b) a week ago c) tomorrow d) last night
8. .... Reem looking after her little brother this evening?
   a) Were b) Are c) Am d) Is
9. Her auntie .... after him this week.
   a) is looking b) are looking c) look d) looks
10. I'm .... dinner this evening.
   a) make b) makes c) made d) making

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My sisters are going to the store .... (yesterday).
2. I'm .... (cook) my parent's favorite meal.
3. She's .... (do) her shopping tomorrow.
4. They .... (stay) with their cousins next week.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My parents are very .... this week.
   a) busy b) quiet c) happy d) clever
2. My sisters are going to the .... this afternoon.
   a) bank b) hospital c) store d) school
3. I'm cooking my parents' favorite ....
   a) meal b) mile c) pile d) dish
4. I like doing more to help at ....
   a) tent b) house c) home d) market

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

OK - cooking - see - family - doing

Anas : Hi, Seif! I'm sorry to hear that your grandma was sick.
Seif : Hello, Anas! Thanks, but she's 1) .... now.
Anas : Great! What are you 2) .... this evening?
Seif : I'm 3) .... dinner for my parents.
Anas : Fantastic! Do you like helping at home?
Seif : Yes, very much. I love helping my 4) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... Layan making cake later?
   a) Are b) Am c) Is d) Did
2. They are .... a party tomorrow.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
3. Lots of friends are .... to the party.
   a) come b) coming c) comes d) came
4. I'm helping my little brother with his homework ....
   a) yesterday b) last night c) tomorrow d) ago
5. My grandma was in hospital. She was ....
   a) well b) sick c) happy d) excited
6. I'm going to the .... to buy the food I need.
   a) farm b) bank c) store d) café



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi Yaseen!

Thanks for your email, and I hope the cooking is fun! Thank you for asking about my grandma. She's OK, but I'm doing her shopping tomorrow because she can't walk far yet. I'm very excited because I'm staying with my cousins next week, just for the weekend. I'm helping them to paint their boat – it's very old. They live by the sea, so it will be awesome! I'll take lots of photos and show them to you. We aren't going on vacation this summer. Our cousins are coming here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city. Are you going anywhere this summer?

See you soon,

Youssef

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Youssef is .... Yassen for his email.
   a) hiding b) sending c) thanking d) asking
2. Youssef is doing his .... 's shopping tomorrow.
   a) father b) grandma c) mother d) grandpa
3. The underlined word "awesome" means ....
   a) fantastic b) bad c) boring d) lazy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why is Youssef doing the shopping for his grandma? ....
5. Who is coming to visit you this summer? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. parents - meal - Yaseen's - know - the - don't - about - .
2. summer - vacation - We - going - this - aren't - on - .
3. going - summer - you - anywhere - Are - this - ?

6 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My arrangements for this summer

Your friend's email address is Youssef@gmail.com. Your name is Yassen and your email address is Yassen@gmail.com.

Guiding elements:

(visiting - Luxor - take photos - go with family - spend a week)

IT SHOULD BE FUN!

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

advice	نصيحة	energy	طاقة	fun	متعة
pasta	مكرونة	team	فريق	extra	إضافي
event	حدث	competition	مسابقة	paint	دهان / يدهن

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
disappoint	يُحبط	disappointed	disappointed
behave	يتصرف	behaved	behaved
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
perform	يؤدي	performed	performed
wear out	يُنهك - يتعب	wore out	worn out
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
spend	يقضي "وقتًا"	spent	spent
tell	يخبر	told	told

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in a row	في صف (طابور)	warn out	يبلى / يتآكل / ينهك
a bit sad	حزين إلى حد ما	take part	يشارك
ask for	يطلب	part of	جزء من
find out	يعرف / يكتشف	make sure	يتأكد

Definitions

تعريفات

disappoint	to behave in a way that makes somebody feel a bit sad.	يُحبط / يُخيب الظن
in a row	one after the other, in order.	في صف (طابور)
worn out	very tired.	منهك

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Study the following

1. Mrs Fayza says that it should be fun to take part.
تقول السيدة فايزة إن المشاركة يجب أن تكون ممتعة.
2. Randa asks Ms Fayza for advice.
راندا تطلب النصيحة من السيدة فايزة.
3. Mrs Fayza says that getting enough sleep will give you more energy.
تقول السيدة فايزة إن الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم سيمنحك المزيد من الطاقة.
4. Foods like rice and pasta will give Randa extra energy.
الأطعمة مثل الأرز والمكرونة ستمنح راندا طاقة إضافية.
5. Mrs Fayza also says that being part of a team is great.
تقول السيدة فايزة أيضًا أن كونك جزءًا من فريق أمر رائع.

Advice النصيحة

Asking for advice: عند طلب النصيحة يمكن أن نستخدم التركيب الآتي:

- If + past simple, what would you do?

Giving advice: عند إعطاء النصيحة يمكن أن نستخدم التركيب الآتي:

- I would + inf...

A : If you had a test, what would you do? لو كان لديك اختبار، ماذا ستفعل؟
B : I would study a little bit every day. كنت سأذاكر قليلًا كل يوم.

A : If your friend was sick, what would you do? لو كانت صديقتك مريضة، ماذا ستفعلين؟
B : I would tell her to go to the doctor. سأخبرها أن تذهب إلى الطبيب.

A : If you had to give a presentation, what would you do?
لو كان عليك تقديم عرض تقديمي، ماذا ستفعل؟
B : I would make lots of notes, and practice it. سوف أدون الكثير من الملاحظات وأتدرب عليها.

A : If you wanted to start a school newspaper, what would you do?
إذا أردت أن تبدأ صحيفة مدرسية، ماذا ستفعل؟
B : I would talk to people in the school, and find out interesting stories.
سوف أتحدث مع الناس في المدرسة وأكتشف قصصًا مثيرة للاهتمام.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. To prepare for important events, you should ask for ....
   a) money b) advice c) food d) advise
2. The events should be ....
   a) fun b) gun c) bun d) none
3. Getting enough sleep will give you more ....
   a) chocolate b) sugar c) energy d) honey
4. Being a part of a .... is great.
   a) line b) team c) row d) club

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

notes - presentation - should - food - practice

Amira: I want to ask you for advice, Safia.

Safia : No problem. What do you want to ask about?

Amira: I want to give a 1) ....

What 2) .... I do?

Safia : You should make lots of 3) ....

Amira: Is there anything else?

Safia : Yes, you should 4) .... it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you want to be healthy, you should have more ....
   a) sweets b) oil c) sleep d) fizzy drinks
2. To be good at sports, you should have .... food.
   a) normal b) special c) ordinary d) common
3. The doctor's .... was not to eat fats.
   a) advice b) flat c) nurse d) device

4. " .... " out means to be very tired.

a) Wrote b) Bought c) Worn d) Thought

5. One after the other, in order, means in a ....

a) glue b) row c) flow d) saw

6. To .... means to behave in a way that makes somebody feel a bit sad.

a) encourage b) discourage c) disappoint d) call

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. part - should - to - take - It - be - fun - .

....

2. of - great - Being - team - part - a - is - .

....

3. day - a little - study - I - bit - every - would - .

....

4. would - a test - you - If - had - what - you do - ?

....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

An art competition

Guiding elements:

(12:00 Saturday - paint - well - planning - pencils and paint)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4) STRONGER TOGETHER

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

title	عنوان	article	مقال
activities	أنشطة	experience	خبرة / تجربة
confused	مرتبك / متحير	unsure	غير متأكد
opinion	رأي	leader	قائد
follower	تابع	success	النجاح
successful	ناجح	quickly	بسرعة
carefully	بعناية / بحرص		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
focus	يركز	focused	focused
prefer	يفضل	preferred	preferred
change	يغير	changed	changed
inspire	يُلهم	inspired	inspired
guide	يرشد	guided	guided
achieve	ينجز / يحقق	achieved	achieved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
find	يجد	found	found
meet	يقابل	met	met
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
learn	يتعلم	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

workon (a project)	يعمل على (مشروع)	outof	خارجا عن
focuson	يركز على	take partin	يشارك في
make new friends	يكون صداقات جديدة	make friends	يكون صداقات
fullof	مملوء بـ	take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
take time	يأخذ وقت	take an interest in	يهتم بـ
common goal	هدف مشترك (شائع)	findout	يكتشف
on their own	بمفردهم		

Definitions

تعريفات

take part	join in	يشارك
take time	do something carefully	يستغرق وقتا
take turn	people do something, one person at a time	يتناوب الأدوار
take an interest	be curious about	يهتم

Listen and read. When might you work in a team?

استمع واقرأ. متى يمكنك العمل ضمن فريق؟

Stronger together



Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to take part. You might learn a lot!

هل سبق لك أن كنت جزءًا من فريق؟ ربما كنت قد عملت في مشروع صفي، أو لعبت في مسابقة رياضية، أو أجبت عن الأسئلة في مسابقة مدرسة. هناك الكثير من الأوقات التي يمكنك فيها العمل ضمن فريق في المدرسة وفي النوادي، أو في أنشطة خارج المدرسة. يقول بعض الناس أنهم يحبون العمل بمفردهم. هذا جيد - من الجيد أن تكون مستقلًا وتركز على عملك. ومع ذلك، إذا كنت تعمل ضمن فريق، فقد تجد أنه من الممتع المشاركة. قد تتعلم الكثير!

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

New friends:
أصدقاء جدد:

When you take part in a new sport, for example, you can easily make new friends. You might meet new people that you haven't met before. Playing together as a team in a game or a competition is a great experience, and you might make friends for life.

عندما تشارك في رياضة جديدة، على سبيل المثال، يمكنك بسهولة تكوين صداقات جديدة. قد تلتقي بأشخاص جدد لم تقابلهم من قبل. يعد اللعب معًا كفريق في لعبة أو مسابقة تجربة رائعة، وقد تتمكن من تكوين صداقات مدى الحياة.

New ideas:
أفكار جديدة:

Have you ever felt confused or unsure when you're working on a project? We all feel like that sometimes. Imagine if you had a whole extra head full of ideas! Or two heads, or three! That's what being in a team is like. Two people have more ideas than one person, and a team of people has even more!

هل شعرت يومًا بالارتباك أو عدم التأكد عندما تعمل على مشروع ما؟ نحن جميعًا نشعر بذلك في بعض الأحيان. تخيل لو كان لديك رأس إضافي كامل مليئ بالأفكار! أو رأسين أو ثلاثة! هذا هو ما يشبه التواجد في الفريق. شخصان لديهما أفكار أكثر من شخص واحد، وفريق من الأشخاص لديه أفكار أكثر!

Learn to listen:
تعلم الاستماع:

Do you prefer talking or listening? Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes turns to speak, and takes time to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an interest in other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.

هل تفضل التحدث أم الاستماع؟ بعض الناس يحبون التحدث كثيرا. ومع ذلك، من المهم الاستماع أيضًا. يعمل الفريق بشكل أفضل عندما يتناوب الجميع في التحدث ويأخذون وقتًا للاستماع لبعضهم البعض. يمكنك أن تتعلم الكثير عندما تهتم بأفكار الآخرين. قد يعني هذا أيضًا أنك ربما تغير رأيك.

Learn about yourself:
تعرف على نفسك:

Are you a leader or a follower? Followers and leaders are both important for the success of a team. Leaders inspire and guide their followers to achieve a common goal. Followers work to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders. When you work in a team, you find out what you're good at, and what you can help others with.

هل أنت قائد أم تابع؟ التابعون والقادة مهمون لنجاح الفريق. يلهم القادة أتباعهم ويوجهونهم لتحقيق هدف مشترك. يعمل التابعون على تحقيق الأهداف من خلال العمل تحت توجيه قادتهم. عندما تعمل ضمن فريق، فإنك تكتشف ما تجيده، وما يمكنك مساعدة الآخرين به.

So, next time you work in a team, try hard to make the team successful. You will learn so much!

لذا، في المرة القادمة التي تعمل فيها ضمن فريق، حاول جاهداً أن تجعل الفريق ناجحاً. سوف تتعلم الكثير!

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can easily .... new friends.
   a) mean b) take c) make d) bake
2. You might meet .... people.
   a) tall b) young c) clever d) new
3. Playing together is ....
   a) great b) bad c) boring d) dull
4. You might make friends for ....
   a) death b) short c) life d) money

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

work - achieve - inspire - game - team

Are you a leader or follower? Followers and leaders are both important for the success of a 1) .... Leaders 2) .... and guide their followers to 3) .... a common goal. Followers 4) .... to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Have you ever been part .... a team?
   a) for b) of c) out d) at
2. Everybody should .... turns to speak.
   a) make b) bake c) take d) give
3. It's fun to take .... in a team.
   a) part b) time c) money d) holiday
4. Are you a .... or a follower?
   a) slave b) king c) prince d) leader
5. Some people say that they like working .... their own.
   a) out b) on c) in d) at
6. In a team, you can make .... friends.
   a) young b) older c) old d) new
7. You might make friends .... life.
   a) for b) to c) on d) at
8. Try hard to make the team ....
   a) fail b) success c) successful d) bad

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

9. A team works best when you take an .... in other people's ideas.
a) interesting b) interested c) interestingly d) interest

10. You might also find .... what you're good at.
a) down b) out c) of d) on

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to take part. You might learn a lot!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about .... in a team.
a) fighting b) working c) swimming d) sleeping

2. The underlined words "on their own" mean ....
a) separate b) together c) alone d) lonely

3. You may have worked in a class ....
a) quiz b) test c) map d) project

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What will happen if you work in a team? ....

5. Find a word in the passage that means "join in". ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. turns - team - Did - take - you - your - in - ?

....

2. easy - friends - make - team - It's - to - a sports - on - .

....

3. people - ideas - Two - have - than - person - more - one - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about " Learn to listen":

Guiding elements:

(prefer - important - interest - take turns)

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

flight	طيران	poster	ملصق
project	مشروع	pleased	مسرور
poem	قصيدة	commands	أوامر
instructions	تعليمات	rhyme	قافية / يتناغم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
try	يحاول	tried	tried
check	يفحص	checked	checked
get	يحصل على	got	got
read	يقرأ	read	read
plan	يخطط	planned	planned
use	يستخدم	used	used
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
rush	يتعجل	rushed	rushed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

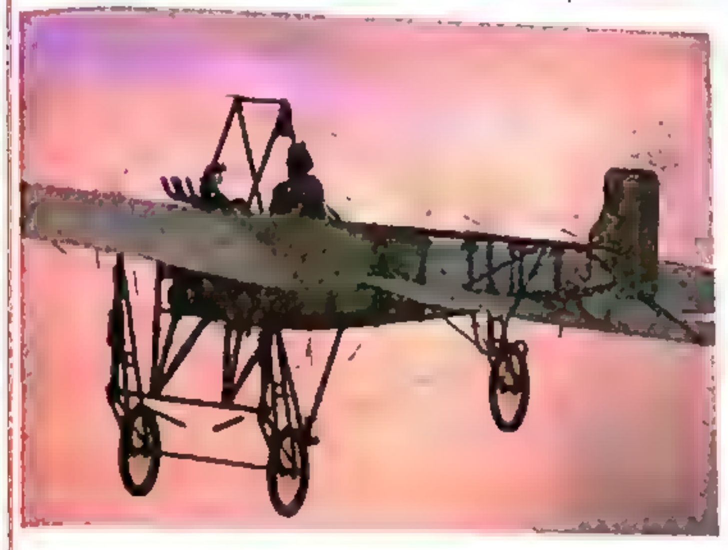
try your best	ابذل قصارى جهدك
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
have a break	يستريح
get it right	يفعلها بطريقة صحيحة
make notes	يدون ملاحظات
don't rush	لا تتعجل

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Try your best! by Fares

At school, we had a project
On the history of flight.
I had to make a poster,
But I couldn't get it right.



My friend told me to ask for help.
"It's good to check," he said.
"If you're not sure, ask a question,
Don't keep it in your head."

My teacher told me to try again.
"Don't be sad," she said.
"Look in books for more ideas,
Make notes on what you've read."

My mom asked me to try my best.
"You can't go wrong," she said.
"But don't forget to have a break!
When you're tired, go to bed!"

My dad told me to stop and think.
"Take time to plan," he said.
"**Don't rush**, use your best ideas,
That's how to get ahead."

And so, I asked, I read, and tried,
I stopped and had a rest.
Then I planned out my ideas,
My poster was the best!



Reported commands and requests

لتحويل الأمر والطلب إلى كلام غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

- نحول said to إلى told أو asked ثم نضع المفعول.
- نستخدم to + inf في الجملة المثبتة.
- نستخدم not to + inf في الجملة المنفية.

Subject (الفاعل - المتكلم) + asked / told + object (مفعول) + to + inf / not to + inf

e.g. Mom said to Nada, "Can you pick up the books, please?"
Mom asked Nada to pick up the books.

e.g. My friend said to me, "Ask for help."
My friend told me to ask for help.

e.g. My teacher said to me, "Don't be sad."
My teacher told me not to be sad.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My friend told me .... ask for help.
   a) for b) to c) at d) on
2. Mom told me to .... out and play.
   a) going b) goes c) go d) gone
3. Safia told me .... play in the street.
   a) to not b) not to c) don't d) doesn't
4. The teacher told Seif to .... his book.
   a) open b) opens c) opening d) opened
5. My mom .... me to try my best.
   a) ask b) asked c) asking d) tells

Help your child learn commands and requests in reported speech.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم تحويل الأمر والطلب إلى غير مباشر.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My mom asked me to .... my best.
   a) buy b) cry c) try d) fly
2. "You can't .... wrong," she said.
   a) go b) went c) gone d) going
3. "But don't .... to have a break!
   a) remember b) recognize c) forget d) redo
4. When you're tired, go to ....
   a) table b) chair c) sofa d) bed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

keep - check - play - learn - ask

My friend told me to ask for help. "It's good to 1) ....," he said. "If you're not sure 2).......... a question. Don't 3) .... it in your head. When you ask, you 4) .... more."

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. At school, we had a project on the history of ....
   a) fly b) flew c) flight d) flown
2. I had to .... a poster.
   a) make b) made c) makes d) making
3. I couldn't get my project ....
   a) left b) north c) write d) right
4. My friend told me to ask .... help.
   a) for b) of c) on d) in
5. My friends asked me to .... them.
   a) helped b) helping c) help d) helps
6. When Seif couldn't get his project right, he felt ....
   a) pleased b) happy c) worried d) excited

7. You can find information ....
   a) in the library   b) on a computer game
   c) on a plane   d) in a comic book
8. Mom asks him to have a break because he's ....
   a) sick   b) late   c) tired   d) early
9. My mom asked me to .... a break.
   a) had   b) has   c) having   d) have
10. My dad told me .... stop and think.
   a) to   b) by   c) for   d) on

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. and play - outside - Dad - me - told - to go - .

....

2. asked - Dalia - with - her - homework - to help - me - .

....

3. me - to wash - Mom - asked - the dishes - .

....

4. to open - Ms Manal - Rashad - his book - told - .

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Mom asked me to .... (washed) the dishes.
2. Ms Manal told Ali to .... (opens) his book.
3. My teacher .... (tell) me to try again.
4. My dad told me to .... (stops) and think.
5. My mom asked me to .... (tidied) my room.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

personal statement	بيان شخصي	confident	واثق
independently	باستقلال / بشكل مستقل	anyway	على أي حال
scientist	عالم	inventor	مخترع
future goals	أهداف مستقبلية	introduction	مقدمة
interests	اهتمامات	subheading	عنوان فرعي
option	اختيار	topic	موضوع
community	مجتمع	reason	سبب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
share	يشارك	shared	shared
compete	ينافس	competed	competed
design	يصمم	designed	designed
include	يتضمن / يشمل	included	included
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	volunteered
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
win	يفوز	won	won

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in front of	أمام	group activities	أنشطة جماعية
but it's fun anyway	ولكنه ممتع على أي حال	make lives better	يحسن المعيشة / يجعل المعيشة أفضل

Personal statement

- by Noha Tousson, aged 11

A- Introduction

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident – I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities.

اسمي نهى وأنا في الصف السادس. أعمل بجد وأنا واثقة من نفسي - ويسعدني أن أشارك أفكاري أمام الفصل. أنا أستمتع بالعمل ضمن فريق، وأحب العمل بشكل مستقل أيضًا. أنا أستمتع بالمشاركة في الأنشطة الجماعية.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

B- My favorite subjects

I enjoy studying history and math. I love science, too, because I want to understand how the world works. I also like PE. I've played in some important volleyball matches this year. My team doesn't always win, but it's fun anyway!

إني أستمتع بدراسة التاريخ والرياضيات. أنا أحب العلوم أيضاً، لأنني أريد أن أفهم كيف يعمل العالم. أنا أيضاً أحب التربية البدنية. لقد لعبت في بعض مباريات الكرة الطائرة الهامة هذا العام. لا يفوز فريقي دائماً، لكن الأمر ممتع على أي حال!

C- My interests

I go to a science club after school. I'm competing in a science competition next week with three friends. We're designing a new robot. I hope our design wins the competition!

أذهب إلى نادي العلوم بعد المدرسة. سأتنافس في مسابقة علمية الأسبوع المقبل مع ثلاثة أصدقاء. نحن نصمم روبوتاً جديداً. أتمنى أن يفوز تصميمنا بالمسابقة!

D- My future goals

Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum. When I'm older, I'd like to be a scientist or an inventor. My science teacher told me to work hard so that I could help people and make lives better.

في العام المقبل، أود القيام بالمزيد من الأنشطة العلمية وزيارة متحف العلوم. عندما أكبر، أود أن أصبح عالماً أو مخترعاً. أخبرني أستاذ العلوم أن أعمل بجد حتى أتمكن من مساعدة الناس وتحسين حياتهم.

TIP

- A personal statement is a text about YOU! You might write one if you're starting a new school, if you want to join a team, or are volunteering in your community.
- Include lots of information and reasons. This helps the reader really get to know you.
- Use subheadings to tell the reader the topic of each part of the personal statement.

Help your child write a personal statement.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب بيان شخصي.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Noha is in grade ....
   a) two b) four c) eight d) six
2. She enjoys working in a ....
   a) team b) dream c) cream d) beam
3. She likes working ....
   a) independent b) independence c) independently d) dependent
4. Noha enjoys taking .... in group activities.
   a) start b) part c) cart d) smart

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wins - robot - school - science - friends

I go to a science club after school. I'm competing in a 1) .... competition next week with three 2) .... We're designing a new 3)................ I hope our design 4) .... the competition!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm happy to .... ideas in front of the class.
   a) post b) share c) dare d) care
2. I enjoy taking part .... group activities.
   a) in b) on c) at d) of
3. I love .... because I want to understand how the world works.
   a) art b) PE c) science d) drama
4. I go to a science .... after school.
   a) club b) hospital c) house d) tent

5. In personal statement, you write about ....
   a) nature b) other people c) yourself d) forests
6. In a personal statement, it's important to include lots of ....
   a) photos b) information c) pictures d) posts
7. Subheadings tell the reader about the .... of each part of the text
   a) topic b) design c) smell d) taste

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I enjoy studying history and math. I love science, too, because I want to understand how the world works. I also like PE. I've played in some important volleyball matches this year. My team doesn't always win, but it's fun anyway!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I enjoy studying history and ....
   a) geography b) religion c) art d) math
2. My team doesn't always ....
   a) win b) gain c) practice d) play
3. I love playing ....
   a) handball b) football c) tennis d) volleyball

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do you love science? ....
5. Have you played in any important matches? ....

5 Write a personal statement about yourself

Guiding elements:

(Introduction - My favorite subjects - My interests - My future goals)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (7)

STORY: LOST IN THE OASIS

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

scouts	الكشافة	blow	تهب "الرياح" / يطير
oasis	واحة	rip	يمزق
leader	قائد	flashlight	كشاف - مصباح يدوي

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

adventure	مغامرة	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
backpack	حقيبة ظهر	sneakers	حذاء رياضي
compass	بوصلة		

Listen and read.

Lost in the oasis

Seleem was really excited to take part in the Scouts' desert adventure. The day before, he packed his backpack. However, it was very heavy, and so his mom told him to check if he really needed all that was in it. He packed it again, with her help. This time, he only put in what he needed. He now had a flashlight, a first aid kit, and a water bottle. His friend Asser told him that he would take a compass, so Seleem didn't pack his.

كان سليم متحمسا جدًا للمشاركة في مغامرة الكشافة الصحراوية. في اليوم السابق، حزم حقيبته. ومع ذلك، كانت ثقيلة جدًا، ولذلك طلبت منه والدته التحقق مما إذا كان يحتاج حقًا إلى كل ما بداخلها. لقد حزمها مرة أخرى بمساعدتها. هذه المرة، لم يضع إلا ما يحتاجه. أصبح لديه الآن مصباح يدوي، صندوق إسعافات أولية، وزجاجة ماء. أخبره صديقه آسر أنه سيأخذ بوصلة، لذلك لم يحزم سليم بوصلته.

They left at ten o'clock the next morning. Everybody met at school, and the Scouts and their teacher traveled by bus to the other side of the oasis. The teacher said they would walk in groups to the meeting place. The Scouts were put into groups, and each group had a leader. The group leaders were older. There was a prize for the team who got to the meeting place first, and Seleem was determined to win.

غادروا في الساعة العاشرة من صباح اليوم التالي. التقى الجميع في المدرسة، وسافر الكشافة ومعلمهم بالحافلة إلى الجانب الآخر من الواحة. قال المعلم إنهم سيسيرون في مجموعات إلى مكان الاجتماع. تم تقسيم الكشافة إلى مجموعات، وكان لكل مجموعة قائد. وكان قادة المجموعة أكبر سنًا. كانت هناك جائزة للفريق الذي وصل إلى مكان اللقاء أولاً، وكان سليم مصمماً على الفوز.

However, it wasn't that easy ...

On the bus, the teacher checked everybody's bags. Unfortunately, Asser's bag was too heavy! The teacher told him to take some things out. Seleem and his

friends helped Asser make his bag lighter. He kept his lunch, his sweater, and his map. He took out his sneakers, some games, and some potato chips. And he also took out his compass.

ومع ذلك، لم يكن الأمر بهذه السهولة...

وفي الحافلة، قام المعلم بفحص حقائب الجميع. لسوء الحظ، كانت حقيبة آسر ثقيلة جدًا! أخبره المعلم أن يُخرج بعض الأشياء. ساعد سليم وأصدقاؤه آسر في تخفيف وزن حقيبته. احتفظ بغدائه وسترته وخريطته. أخرج حذاءه الرياضي وبعض الألعاب وبعض رقائق البطاطس. وأخرج أيضا بوصلته.

When they got off the bus, the teacher gave each group a map. He told them they had to go north. The Scouts weren't allowed to use their phones. The groups set off, using the map to follow the road. It was very hot, so after a while, Seleem and his group stopped to have some water. They sat under a tree, but there was suddenly a strong wind. It blew the map out of Seleem's hands! They ran after it, but when they caught it, the map ripped in half.

عندما نزلوا من الحافلة، أعطى المعلم كل مجموعة خريطة. وأخبرهم أن عليهم أن يتجهوا شمالاً. لم يُسمح للكشافة باستخدام هواتفهم. انطلقت المجموعات مستخدمة الخريطة لتتبع الطريق. كان الجو حارًا جدًا، لذا بعد فترة، توقف سليم ومجموعته لتناول بعض الماء. جلسوا تحت شجرة، ولكن فجأة هبت ريح قوية. لقد طيرت الخريطة من بين يدي سليم! ركضوا خلفها، ولكن عندما أمسكوا بها، تمزقت الخريطة إلى نصفين.

The group couldn't fix the map, so they held the two pieces together. The map was difficult to read, and they weren't sure where to go. Seleem knew they had to go north, so he asked Asser for his compass. Asser looked in his bag, but he didn't have it!

لم تتمكن المجموعة من إصلاح الخريطة، لذلك قاموا بمسك القطعتين معًا. كان من الصعب قراءة الخريطة، ولم يكونوا متأكدين من المكان الذي سيذهبون إليه. عرف سليم أن عليهم التوجه شمالًا، فطلب من آسر بوصلته. نظر آسر في حقيبته، لكنه لم يجدها!

The Luckily, Samir had a really good idea. He knew how to use the hands on his watch to find north, by pointing them at the sun.

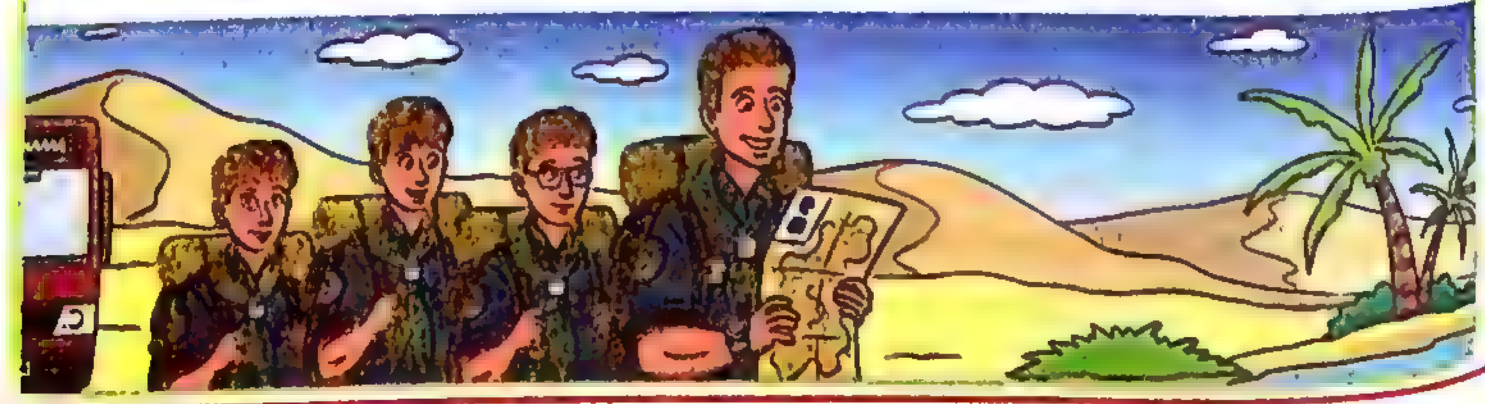
ولحسن الحظ، كان لدى سمير فكرة جيدة حقًا. كان يعرف كيفية استخدام عقارب ساعته للعثور على الشمال، من خلال توجيهها نحو الشمس.

After a few minutes, the Scouts knew where to go. The group set off again, following Samir. They were the last group to reach the meeting place. However, they won a prize for having the best idea to find north!

وبعد بضع دقائق، عرف الكشافة إلى أين يذهبون. انطلقت المجموعة مرة أخرى متتبعة سمير. كانوا المجموعة الأخيرة التي وصلت إلى مكان الاجتماع. ومع ذلك، فقد فازوا بجائزة لامتلاكهم أفضل فكرة للعثور على الشمال!

Next time, Seleem will make sure he packs a flashlight, a first aid kit, a water bottle ... and his compass!

في المرة القادمة، سيتأكد سليم من إحضار مصباح يدوي، وصندوق إسعافات أولية، وزجاجة ماء... وبوصلته!



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The group couldn't .... the map.
   a) mix b) fix c) trick d) clean
2. They .... the two pieces together.
   a) held b) failed c) killed d) bought
3. The map was difficult to ....
   a) sell b) buy c) write d) read
4. They had to go ....
   a) east b) west c) north d) south

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sun - north - legs - hands - pointing

Luckily, Samir had a really good idea. He knew how to use the 1) .... on his watch to find 2)........................, by 3) .... them at the 4) ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

The children left at ten o'clock the next morning. Everybody met at school, and the Scouts and their teacher traveled by bus to the other side of the oasis. The teacher said they would walk in groups to the meeting place. The Scouts were put into groups, and each group had a leader. The group leaders were older. There was a prize for the team who got to the meeting place first, and Seleem was determined to win.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They left at .... o'clock the next morning.
   a) three b) five c) ten d) twelve
2. They traveled by bus to the other side of the ....
   a) island b) oasis c) forest d) jungle
3. The Scouts were put into ....
   a) lines b) rows c) groups d) piles

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What was Seleem determined to do? ....
5. Where did they meet? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The wind .... the map out of his hands.
   a) blew b) sent c) gave d) cut
2. Students who go to a desert adventure are called ....
   a) traders b) scientists c) vets d) scouts
3. The .... is a place in the desert where you can find water and plants.
   a) lake b) island c) oasis d) mountain
4. The person who guides a group of people is their ....
   a) reader b) leader c) president d) king
5. There was a strong ...., it blew the map out of his hands.
   a) wind b) sun c) moon d) star
6. .... means to cut into halves.
   a) Gather b) Build c) Rip d) Catch

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. got - place - the - to - The Scouts - meeting - .

....

2. went - Scouts - on - the - an - with - adventure - Seleem - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My adventure in the desert

Guiding elements:

(last year - lost compass - afraid - my friends)

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

My friend's problem

Last week I visited my friend Anas. While I was there, he was quiet and sad. I asked him what was the matter but he refused to tell me anything. I tried to make him happy. I told him some jokes but he didn't laugh. Finally, I decided to give him some space, and wait for him to tell me the problem. Was that right?

Working in a team

Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to take part. You might learn a lot!

My personal Statement

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident – I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities. I enjoy studying history and math. I go to a science club after school. Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum.

Learn about yourself

Are you a leader or a follower? Followers and leaders are both important for the success of a team. Leaders inspire and guide their followers to achieve a common goal. Followers work to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders. When you work in a team, you find out what you're good at, and what you can help others with.

Review on Unit (8)

Vocabulary

afraid	خائف	cookies	كعك	article	مقال
anxious	قلق	advice	نصيحة	experience	خبرة / تجربة
determined	عازم / مصمم	energy	طاقة	confused	مرتبك / متحير
embarrassed	مُحرَج	fun	متعة	unsure	غير متأكد
independent	مستقل	pasta	مكرونة	opinion	رأي
patient	صبور	team	فريق	leader	قائد
store	متجر	extra	إضافي	follower	تابع
excited	متحمس	event	حدث	success	النجاح
awesome	رائع	competition	مسابقة	successful	ناجح
meal	وجبة	paint	دهان / يدهن	quickly	بسرعة
auntie	عمة / خالة	title	عنوان / لقب	carefully	بعناية / بحرص
flight	الطيران	poster	ملصق	project	مشروع
pleased	مسرور	poem	قصيدة	commands	أوامر
instructions	تعليمات	reason	سبب	personal statement	بيان شخصي
confident	واثق	independently	باستقلال	anyway	على أي حال
scientist	عالم	inventor	مخترع	future goals	أهداف مستقبلية
introduction	مقدمة	interests	اهتمامات	subheading	عنوان فرعي
quiet	هادئ	scary	مخيف	presentation	عرض تقديمي
sneakers	حذاء رياضي	adventure	مغامرة	aquarium	معرض أحياء مائية
compass	بوصلة	backpack	حقيبة ظهر	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
option	اختيار	topic	موضوع	community	مجتمع

Help your child revise unit (8).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثامنة.

The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

Subject + (am / is / are) + (v + ing)

e.g. I'm **walking** to school.

- She **is reading** a book.

Usage الاستخدام

- **To express an action that is happening now.** للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.

e.g. They **are watching** TV **now.**

Listen!	استمع!	today	اليوم	at present	في الوقت الحاضر
Look!	انظر!	now	الآن	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة

e.g. **Listen!** The girl is singing.

- **We can also use it to talk about arrangements in the future.**
يمكننا أيضًا استخدامه للحديث عن الترتيبات في المستقبل.

e.g. **I'm helping** my little brother with his homework tomorrow.

- **We often use a time phrase to show when this will happen. Time phrases include:**
غالبًا ما نستخدم عبارة زمنية لإظهار متى سيحدث هذا. تشمل العبارات الزمنية ما يلي:

Later	فيما بعد	this evening	هذا المساء	next week	الأسبوع القادم
next month	الشهر القادم	tomorrow	غدًا	at five o'clock	الساعة الخامسة

e.g. Heba is going on vacation **next week.**

Negative النفي

Subject + (am / is / are) + not + (v + ing)

e.g. I **am not collecting** eggs.

Yes / No question

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. Is he walking to school?

Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

Are + (we / you / they / a plural noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. Are they watching a TV program?

- Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

Wh question

Q.W + (is / are) + subject + (v + ing)...?

e.g. What is he doing now? - He is playing sports.

What are you doing at the moment? - I'm studying my lessons.

Reported commands and requests

لتحويل الأمر والطلب إلى كلام غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

١- نحول said to إلى told أو asked ثم نضع المفعول.

٢- نستخدم to + inf في الجملة المثبتة.

٣- نستخدم not to + inf في الجملة المنفية.

Subject (الفاعل - المتكلم) + asked / told + object (مفعول) + to + inf / not to + inf

e.g. Mom said to Nada, "Can you pick up the books, please?"
Mom asked Nada to pick up the books.

e.g. My friend said to me, "Ask for help."
My friend told me to ask for help.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

قلق	....	خائف	....
مُحرَج - مرتبك	....	عازم / مصمم	....
صبور	....	مستقل	....

Lesson (2)

متحمس	....	ماهر	....
وجبة	....	رائع	....
كعك	....	عمة / خالة	....

Lesson (3)

طاقة	....	نصيحة	....
مكرونة	....	متعة	....
إضافي	....	فريق	....

Lesson (4)

مقال	....	عنوان	....
خبرة / تجربة	....	أنشطة	....
غير متأكد	....	يُنجز - يُحقق	....

Lesson (5)

ملصق	....	طيران	....
مسرور	....	مشروع	....
أوامر	....	قصيدة	....
يبذل قصارى جهده	....	تعليمات	....

Lesson (6)

واثق	....	بيان شخصي	....
على أي حال	....	باستقلال / بشكل مستقل	....
مخترع	....	عالم	....

Lesson (7)

الكشافة	....	تهب / يُطير	....
واحة	....	يمزق	....
قائد	....	مغامرة	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'd like to visit a science ....
   a) museum b) exhibition c) funfair d) cave
2. I'd like to do more science ....
   a) experiences b) sums c) activities d) problems
3. I'd like to be a .... or an inventor
   a) vet b) teacher c) scientist d) pilot
4. My teacher told me to work ....
   a) hardly b) easily c) quickly d) hard

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

volleyball - works - plays - because - win

I enjoy studying history and math. I love science, too, 1).......... I want to understand how the world 2).......... . I also like PE. I've played in some important 3).......... matches this year. My team doesn't always 4).........., but it's fun anyway!

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

On the bus, the teacher checked everybody's bags. Unfortunately, Asser's bag was too heavy! The teacher told him to take some things out. Seleem and his friends helped Asser make his bag lighter. He kept his lunch, his sweater, and his map. He took out his sneakers, some games, and some potato chips. And he also took out his compass.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The teacher .... everybody's bags.
   a) picked b) packed c) checked d) held
2. They were asked to make their bags ....
   a) heavier b) lighter c) easier d) quicker
3. The underlined word "Unfortunately" means ....
   a) luckily b) fortunately c) inspired d) unluckily

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What things did Asser keep? ....
5. Did he keep his compass? ....

4 The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No.

1. The younger students didn't find the newspaper website. (   )
2. The team didn't really know how to make videos. (   )
3. On social media, people always write a lot of words. (   )
4. Hatem was a bad leader. (   )

B) Read and answer the questions

5. Who came to interview the team?
6. What does Tarek do now as an adult?

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... Seif's sisters visiting the store now?
   a) Do   b) Did   c) Are   d) Can
2. I'm .... cookies for my friends later.
   a) bake   b) baking   c) bakes   d) baked
3. We are helping our parents ....
   a) yesterday   b) ago   c) in the past   d) tomorrow
4. His mom asked him to .... a break.
   a) have   b) has   c) had   d) having
5. My friend told me .... ask for help.
   a) of   b) to   c) on   d) off
6. Safia told Seif to .... his book.
   a) opens   b) opened   c) opening   d) open

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. outside - and - play - Dad - me - told - to go - .
....
2. asked - Dalia - to help - with her homework - me - .
....
3. me - to wash - Mom - asked - the dishes - .
....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Personal statement

Guiding elements:

Your favorite subjects / your interests / your goals in the future

Review (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient .... wanted to keep clean.
   a) Americans   b) French   c) Egyptians   d) Italians
2. Clean teeth were .... to them.
   a) primary   b) important   c) essential   d) unimportant
3. They .... a type of toothpaste.
   a) made   b) did   c) invented   d) sold
4. They mixed salt, flowers, mint and .... into a paste.
   a) onion   b) pepper   c) cucumber   d) tomato

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

robot - machine - watch - as - like

There were lots of great ideas in the class. We wanted to design a 1)................ to store rainwater. Mariam wanted to make a 2)................ that looks 3)................ a duck and cleans rivers. Mariam's idea was as good 4)................ ours, so we both won the prize!

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, our teacher asked us a question. Ms Nawal asked, "If you could design an invention to help the environment, what would you make?" She said she would give a prize to the person, or team, with the best idea. She told us to decide if we wanted to work on our own or with other people. I worked in a team with my friends, Sara and Reem. I like working with them. We listen to each other and we all share our ideas. Our friend Mariam said she wanted to work on her own. She's very nice, but she sometimes isn't very patient, so she prefers to do independent work.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our teacher asked if we could design an ....
   a) invitation   b) invention   c) decoration   d) preparation
2. She would give a .... for the best idea.
   a) prize   b) present   c) gift   d) reward
3. I worked in a .... with Sara and Reem.
   a) charity   b) company   c) team   d) dream

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Mariam prefer? ....
5. Why do you like working with Sara and Reem? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No.

1. The team could use a phone to film their stories. (..............................)
2. A local teacher came to the school to give a talk. (..............................)
3. The newspaper team's success was terrible for the school. (..............................)
4. Now, Hatem and Tarek work in the news. (..............................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

5. Who was a good leader? ....
6. What does Bassant do now as an adult? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My sister asked .... to help her tidy the kitchen.
   a) we b) me c) I d) they
2. My dad .... me to do my best.
   a) tell b) telling c) told d) hold
3. If I .... a bike, I would make one with solar panels.
   a) designed b) design c) designs d) designing
4. If she took part in the swimming competition, how often .... she practice?
   a) can b) may c) will d) would
5. He isn't .... chess with me next Monday.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
6. She's going to art club ....
   a) last night b) ever c) yesterday d) tomorrow

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. going - He's - Tuesday - to - on - club - cookery - .

....

2. visiting - She's - week - her - next - friends - .

....

3. decided - own - She - to - her - on - work - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Working in a team

Guiding elements:

(project - competition - independent)



Read the text. What do you think a gratitude journal is? Check (✓) one answer

A gratitude journal is a book where you write about:

1. things that you want to do.
2. things that you are thankful for.
3. places you've visited.



My gratitude journal by Ghazal

مجلة امتناني للكاتبة غزال



Monday

Today was a great day! I met my cousins in the park after school and we had ice cream. It was sunny and the sky was blue. We had fun! They always make me laugh.

يوم الاثنين

اليوم كان يومًا عظيمًا التقيت بأبناء عمومتي في الحديقة بعد المدرسة وتناولنا الآيس كريم. كان الجو مشمسًا والسماء زرقاء. استمتعنا انهم دائما يجعلوني أضحك.

Tuesday

Today wasn't as exciting as yesterday. We did a test at school, and I got good marks! That made me happy and surprised because I thought it was difficult.

يوم الثلاثاء

اليوم لم يكن مثيرا مثل الأمس. لقد أجرينا اختبارًا في المدرسة وحصلت على درجات جيدة! لقد جعلني ذلك سعيدًا ومتفاجئًا لأنني كنت أعتقد أن الأمر صعب.

Wednesday

I always love Wednesdays. I have swimming club after school, and I love being in the water. I always feel really happy and relaxed after swimming.

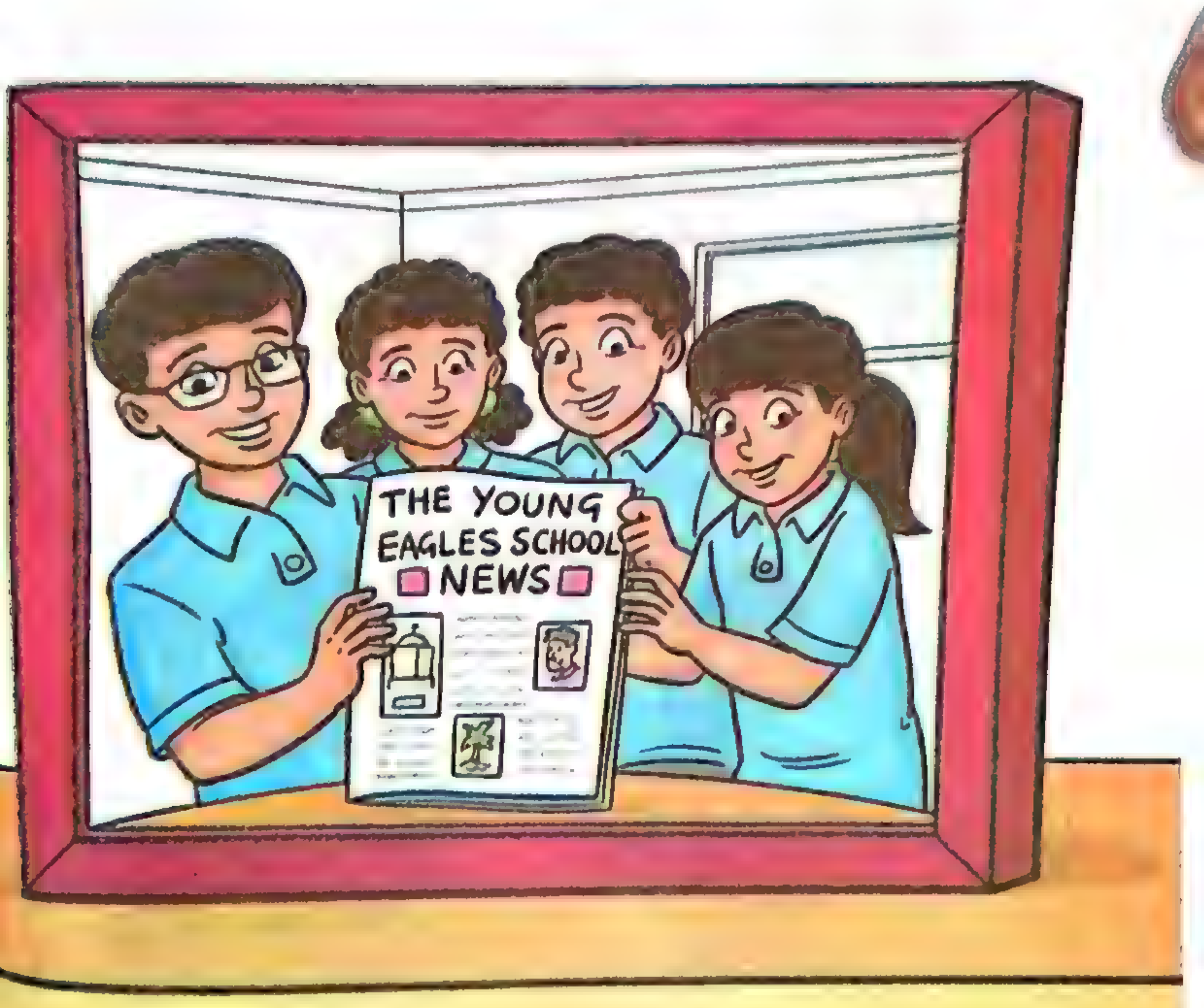
يوم الأربعاء

أنا دائمًا أحب أيام الأربعاء. عندي نادي للسباحة بعد المدرسة، وأحب أن أكون في الماء. أشعر دائمًا بالسعادة والاسترخاء بعد السباحة.

FICTION READER:

NEWS TEAM

فريق الأخبار



BY NICOLA GARDNER

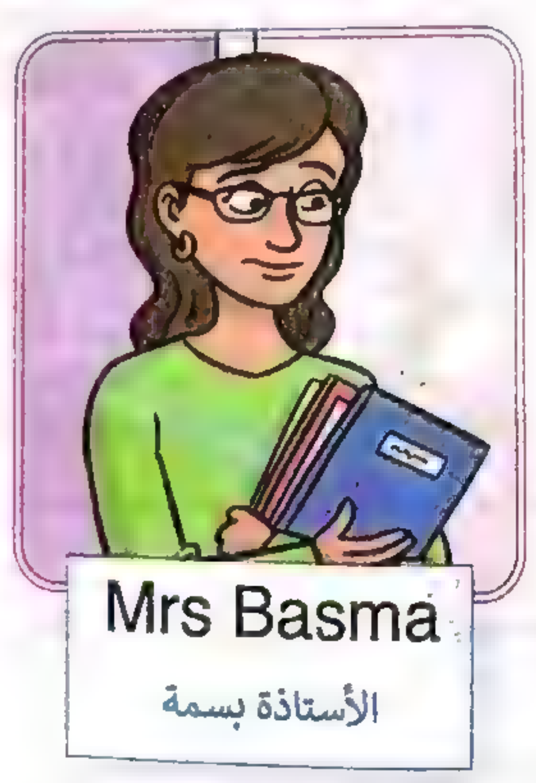
ILLUSTRATED BY MATT WARD



Characters





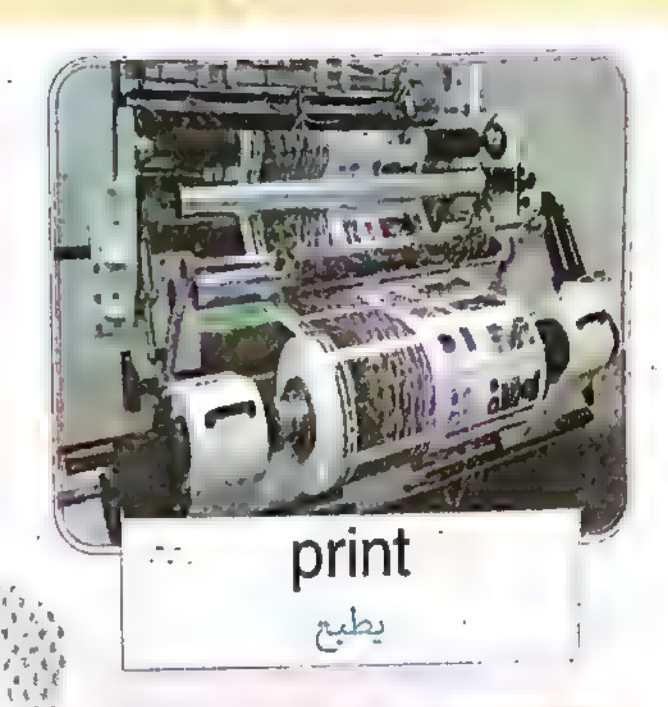


Help your child identify the characters of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

PICTURE DICTIONARY


kitten
قطة صغيرة


print
يطبع


beach clean-up
تنظيف الشاطئ

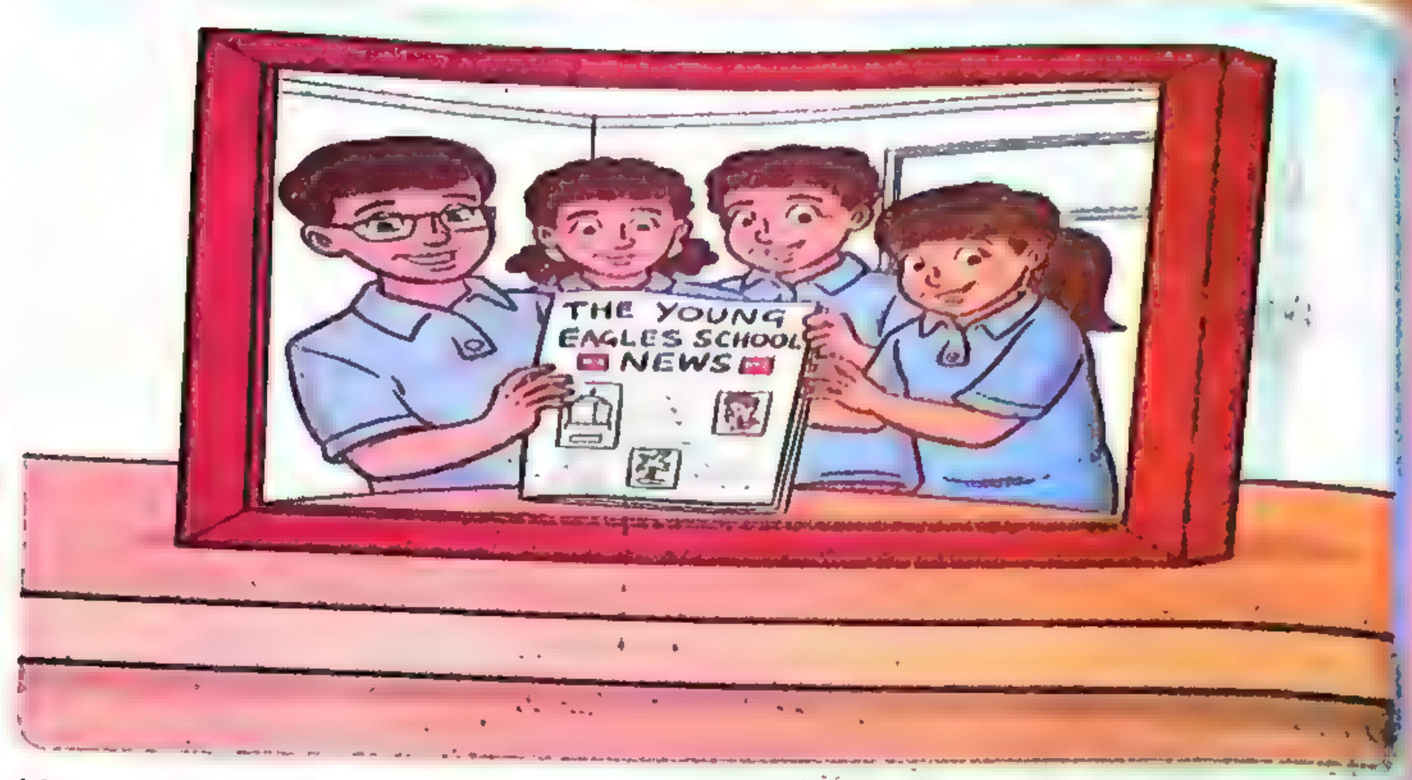

deaf
أصم


enthusiastic
متحمس



flyer
نشرة إعلانية

Part (1) The Beginning



Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are good friends. They often meet to chat about their lives, and their work. They also like to chat about their school days together.

They became friends 15 years ago, at primary school. They all went to Young Eagles Primary School. When they were in Grade 6, they had the idea to produce an English-language newspaper together. In it, they wrote about the latest events in school, and in the local area.

"Why do you want to start a school newspaper?" Hatem's mom asked him.

"Well, I think it's important for people to know what's happening around them. Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine all agree," he said.

حاتم وطارق وبسنت ونادين أصدقاء جيدون. غالبًا ما يجتمعون للدردشة حول حياتهم وعملهم. كما أنهم يحبون التحدث عن أيام دراستهم معًا.

لقد أصبحوا أصدقاء منذ ١٥ عامًا في المدرسة الابتدائية. ذهبوا جميعًا إلى مدرسة النسور الصغيرة الابتدائية. عندما كانوا في الصف السادس، خطرت ببالهم فكرة إصدار صحيفة باللغة الإنجليزية معًا. وكتبوا فيها عن آخر الأحداث في المدرسة وفي المنطقة المحلية.

سألت والدة حاتم: "لماذا تريد إنشاء صحيفة مدرسية؟"

قال "حسنًا، أعتقد أنه من المهم للناس أن يعرفوا ما يحدث حولهم. "طارق وبسنت ونادين متفقون جميعًا".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Hatem was the editor. He was a good leader, and great at writing. Every week, he asked his team for interesting news stories. His job was to decide which stories should be their main stories. Hatem read everybody's writing, and checked with the teacher to make sure the English was correct. The team then put the pages together, and printed the newspaper for the school. "When's the newspaper coming out?" the younger children asked them every week.

"Tomorrow, don't worry!" the newspaper team said.

كان حاتم هو رئيس التحرير. وكان قائداً جيداً وبارعًا في الكتابة. كان يسأل فريقه كل أسبوع عن قصص إخبارية مثيرة للاهتمام. كانت وظيفته هي تحديد الأخبار التي يجب أن تكون أخبارهم الرئيسية. كان حاتم يقرأ كتابات الجميع، ويراجع مع المعلم للتأكد من صحة اللغة الإنجليزية. ثم يقوم الفريق بتجميع الصفحات وطباعة الصحيفة للمدرسة.

كان الأطفال الأصغر سنًا يسألونهم كل أسبوع: "متى ستصدر الجريدة؟" وكان فريق الصحيفة يجيبون قائلين: "غدًا. لا تقلقوا."



Tarek knew a lot about sports, so he was the sports journalist in the team. He went to the PE teacher every week, and asked, "What's happening in sports this week, please?" Tarek reported on the sports games so everybody at school could read about their successes. He also went to the school sports day, and talked to the school's football, volleyball, and basketball teams.

"It's good to have Tarek on the school newspaper," said the PE teacher. "He helps everybody in school take an interest in sport."

كان طارق يعرف الكثير عن الرياضة، لذلك كان الصحفي الرياضي في الفريق. كان يذهب إلى مدرس التربية البدنية كل أسبوع، ويسأله: "من فضلك، ماذا يحدث في الرياضة هذا الأسبوع؟" كان طارق يكتب تقارير عن الألعاب الرياضية حتى يتمكن كل فرد في المدرسة من القراءة عن نجاحاتهم. كما كان يحضر أيضًا اليوم الرياضي المدرسي، ويتحدث إلى فرق المدرسة لكرة القدم والكرة الطائرة وكرة السلة.

قال مدرس التربية البدنية: "من الجيد أن يكون طارق في صحيفة المدرسة. إنه يساعد الجميع في المدرسة على الاهتمام بالرياضة."

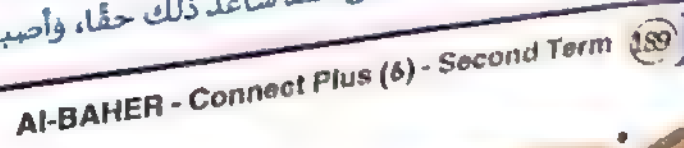
Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.

Bassant loved science and the environment, so she often went to science **fairs**. She found out who was doing interesting experiments. Bassant encouraged the younger children to recycle the school trash, and motivated them to think about how they could help their environment. Once, Bassant went on a school trip with her class to the beach. They looked at the effects of climate change there. Bassant and the other children also noticed plastic, and other trash, on the beach.

"This is awful. We need to protect our waters and the wildlife there," said Bassant. She thought a lot about the trash on the beach. After the trip, she organized a beach clean-up. It really helped, and the beach was clean again!

كانت بسنت تحب العلوم والبيئة، لذلك كانت تذهب في كثير من الأحيان إلى المعارض العلمية. اكتشفت من كان يقوم بتجارب مثيرة للاهتمام. شجعت بسنت الأطفال الصغار على إعادة تدوير النفايات المدرسية، وحفزتهم على التفكير في كيفية مساعدة بيئتهم. ذات مرة، ذهبت بسنت في رحلة مدرسية مع فصلها إلى الشاطئ. نظروا إلى آثار تغير المناخ هناك. لاحظت بسنت والأطفال الآخرون أيضًا وجود بلاستيك وقمامة أخرى على الشاطئ. قالت بسنت: "هذا فظيع. نحن بحاجة إلى حماية مياهنا والحياة البرية فيها". لقد فكرت كثيرًا في القمامة على الشاطئ. وبعد الرحلة، قامت بتنظيم حملة تنظيف للشاطئ. لقد ساعد ذلك حقًا، وأصبح الشاطئ نظيفًا مرة أخرى!



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Nadine was really interested in art, so she spent a lot of time in the art studio in school, and doing paintings and pottery outside of school. Her mom was an artist and taught her a lot about different ways of painting and making art. Nadine reported on art competitions in school. A friend of Nadine's went to the local deaf club, and she invited Nadine to an art exhibition there. The exhibition was called "Art is for everybody!" and was very popular. Nadine wrote a report all about it for the school newspaper. Nadine was the newspaper team's photographer, too. Her mom gave her a camera for her eleventh birthday, and showed her how to use it. When there was a news story, Tarek, Hatem, or Bassant called for Nadine, their photographer!

كانت نادين مهتمة حقًا بالفن، لذلك كانت تقضي الكثير من الوقت في الاستوديو الفني بالمدرسة، وكانت ترسم اللوحات والأواني الفخارية خارج المدرسة. كانت والدتها فنانة وعلمتها الكثير عن الطرق المختلفة للرسم وصناعة الفن. قدمت نادين تقريراً عن المسابقات الفنية في المدرسة. ذهبت إحدى صديقات نادين إلى نادي الصم المحلي، ودعت نادين إلى معرض فني هناك. كان المعرض بعنوان "الفن للجميع!" وكان يحظى بشعبية كبيرة. كتبت نادين تقريرًا عن ذلك لصحيفة المدرسة.

كانت نادين مصورة فريق الصحيفة أيضًا. أعطتها والدتها كاميرا في عيد ميلادها الحادي عشر، وعلمتها كيفية استخدامها. عندما يكون هناك خبر، كان طارق أو حاتم أو بسنت يقومون بالاتصال بمصورتهم نادين!

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



1 Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem, Tarek, Basant and Nadine are good friends. (..............................)
2. The friends all went to a preparatory school. (..............................)
3. Hatem was the editor. (..............................)
4. Hatem checked everybody's writing with the doctor. (..............................)
5. Tarek was the sports journalist in the team. (..............................)
6. Tarek reported on the sports games. (..............................)
7. Bassant loves geography. (..............................)
8. Bassant went on a school trip to the club. (..............................)
9. Nadine was really interested in art. (..............................)
10. The exhibition was called "Sport is for everybody" (..............................)

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. When did the friends have the idea to produce a newspaper? ....
2. What do the friends often chat about? ....
3. Who is the editor of the newspaper? ....
4. Why did Hatem read everybody's writing with the teacher? ....
5. Who was the sports journalist in the team? ....
6. What did Bassant and the children notice on the beach? ....
7. What did Bassant organize? ....
8. What was Nadine interested in? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Part (2) The Middle



The team also helped people in the community. For example, a family who lived near the school was sad because their cat, Kitty, was lost. They couldn't find her and were very worried.

The newspaper team made a **flyer** about Kitty, with a photo of her, and a contact phone number. They printed it and made copies. After school, the team went to houses in the area and put flyers in front of the doors. Finally, after three days, a local man rang the newspaper team. He said that he found a cat that matched Kitty's features.

"I think it's Kitty!" he said. Kitty was found.

"Thank you so much!" the family said to the man, and the team, when they had Kitty back home."You were a great help!"

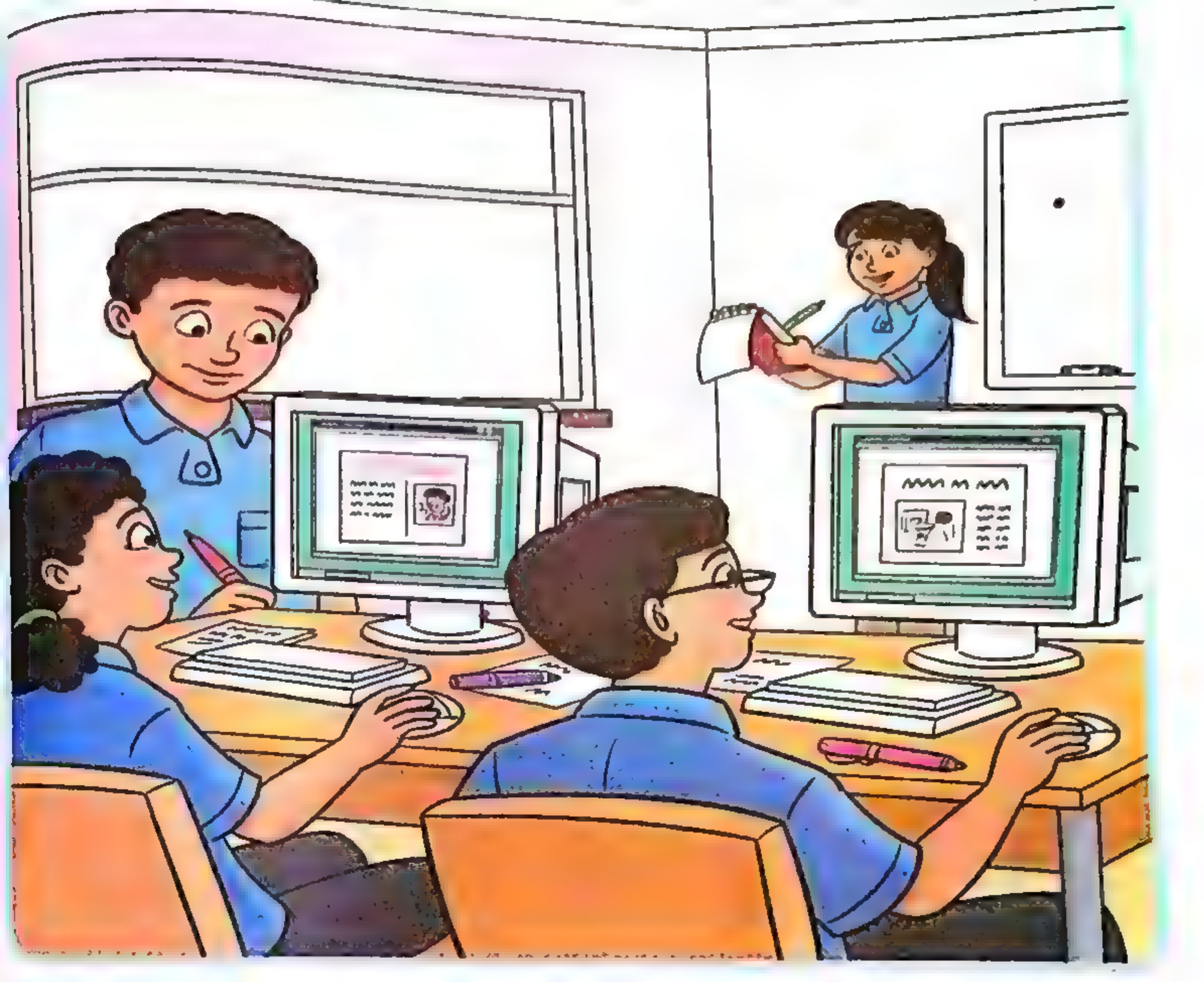
كما ساعد الفريق الناس في المجتمع. على سبيل المثال، كانت العائلة التي تعيش بالقرب من المدرسة حزينة بسبب فقدان قطتها كيتي. لم يتمكنوا من العثور عليها وكانوا قلقين للغاية.

قام فريق الصحيفة بإعداد نشرة عن كيتي تحتوي على صورة لها ورقم هاتف للاتصال بهم. لقد طبعوها وعملوا نسخًا منها. بعد انتهاء اليوم الدراسي، توجه الفريق إلى المنازل في المنطقة وقاموا بوضع منشورات أمام الأبواب. وأخيرًا، بعد ثلاثة أيام، اتصل رجل من السكان المحليين بفريق الصحيفة. قال إنه وجد قطة تطابق ملامح كيتي.

قال: "أعتقد أنها كيتي!" تم العثور على كيتي.

قالت العائلة للرجل وللفريق عندما أعادوا كيتي إلى المنزل: " شكراً جزيلاً! لقد كنتم عونًا كبيرًا!"

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Sometimes, the newspaper team had problems to solve. One week in October, the team were getting the newspaper ready to print, as usual. They were very excited because they had some great stories. The school volleyball team was in the finals of the National Volleyball Games, and Tarek was writing a news report about it. Bassant was writing a report about an important local scientist who came to the school to give a talk. Nadine was writing about a new photography exhibition in town.

في بعض الأحيان، كان يواجه فريق الصحيفة مشاكل يجب حلها. في أحد أسابيع شهر أكتوبر، كان الفريق يقوم بتجهيز الصحيفة للطباعة، كالعادة. لقد كانوا متحمسين للغاية لأن لديهم بعض الأخبار الرائعة. وصل فريق الكرة الطائرة المدرسية إلى نهائيات بطولة الألعاب الوطنية للكرة الطائرة، وكان طارق يكتب تقريرًا إخباريًا عنه. كانت بسنت تكتب تقريرًا عن عالِم محلي مهم جاء إلى المدرسة لإلقاء محاضرة. كانت نادين تكتب عن معرض جديد للتصوير الفوتوغرافي في المدينة.



That day, the team stayed later at school to get the newspaper ready and printed. Nadine had all her photos ready, too.

Suddenly, Hatem went to check the paper for printing.

"Oh no!" he said. "We don't have enough paper!"

"I know! What about Mr Medhat? Can't we ask him for more paper?" said Bassant.

"No, he's away on holiday," said Tarek.

في ذلك اليوم، بقي الفريق لوقت متأخر في المدرسة لتجهيز الصحيفة وطباعتها. كانت نادين قد جهزت جميع صورها أيضًا.

وفجأة ذهب حاتم للتأكد من ورق الطباعة.

قال: "أوه لا! ليس لدينا ما يكفي من الورق!"

قال بسنت:"أنا أعرف! وماذا عن السيد مدحت؟ ألا يمكننا أن نطلب منه المزيد من الورق؟"

قال طارق: «لا، إنه مسافر في إجازة».



"What shall we do? I'm really worried," said Bassant.
"I know. I'm worried, too," said Tarek.
"I have an idea!" said Nadine. "On social media, people don't always write a lot of words, they use videos to tell stories. Why don't we make videos of our news stories?"
Hatem said, "That's a good idea."
"Let's go and talk to Mrs Basma to see if that's OK," said Nadine.

قالت بسنت: " ماذا سنفعل. أنا قلقة حقًا".

قال طارق:"أنا أعرف. أنا قلق أيضًا".

قالت نادين:"لدي فكرة! على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، لا يكتب الأشخاص دائمًا الكثير من الكلمات، بل يستخدمون مقاطع الفيديو لسرد القصص. لماذا لا نصنع مقاطع فيديو لقصصنا الإخبارية؟"

قال حاتم: "فكرة جيدة."

قالت نادين: "دعونا نذهب ونتحدث مع الأستاذة بسمة لنرى إذا كان الأمر على ما يرام".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Bassant and Nadine found Mrs Basma.
"Excuse me, Mrs Basma, we have a problem with printing our newspaper," said Bassant. "Can we use a phone to film our stories?"
Mrs Basma was **enthusiastic**. "I think that's a great idea," she said, "and it will make it easier for the children who find it difficult to read to follow the stories, too."
The girls went back to tell the boys – they were very excited.

وجدت بسنت ونادين الأستاذة بسمة.

قالت بسنت: "عذراً يا أستاذة بسمة، لدينا مشكلة في طباعة صحيفتنا. هل يمكننا استخدام الهاتف لتصوير أخبارنا؟"

كانت الأستاذة بسمة متحمسة. وقالت: "أعتقد أن هذه فكرة رائعة، وستسهل على الأطفال الذين يجدون صعوبة في القراءة متابعة الأخبار أيضًا".

عادت الفتيات ليخبرن الأولاد – لقد كانوا متحمسين للغاية.



Mrs Basma came to talk to the team. She said, "I've had an idea! Why don't you put your written stories and your videos on the school website, too? Let me know when the videos are ready in the morning, and I'll show you how to do that."

The newspaper team were very happy, but nervous, too. "We don't really know how to make videos," said Tarek.

"Well," said Hatem, "everybody knows this is the first time we're using videos – they will understand."

جاءت الأستاذة بسمة للتحدث مع الفريق. وقالت: "عندي فكرة! لماذا لا تضعون أخباركم المكتوبة ومقاطع الفيديو على موقع المدرسة أيضًا؟ أعلموني عندما تكون مقاطع الفيديو جاهزة في الصباح، وسأوضح لكم كيفية القيام بذلك."

كان فريق الصحيفة سعيدًا جدًا، ولكنه متوتر أيضًا. قال طارق: "لا نعرف حقًا كيف نصنع مقاطع فيديو."

قال حاتم: "حسنًا، الجميع يعلم أن هذه هي المرة الأولى التي نستخدم فيها مقاطع الفيديو، وسوف يفهمون ذلك."



1 Read and write YES or NO.

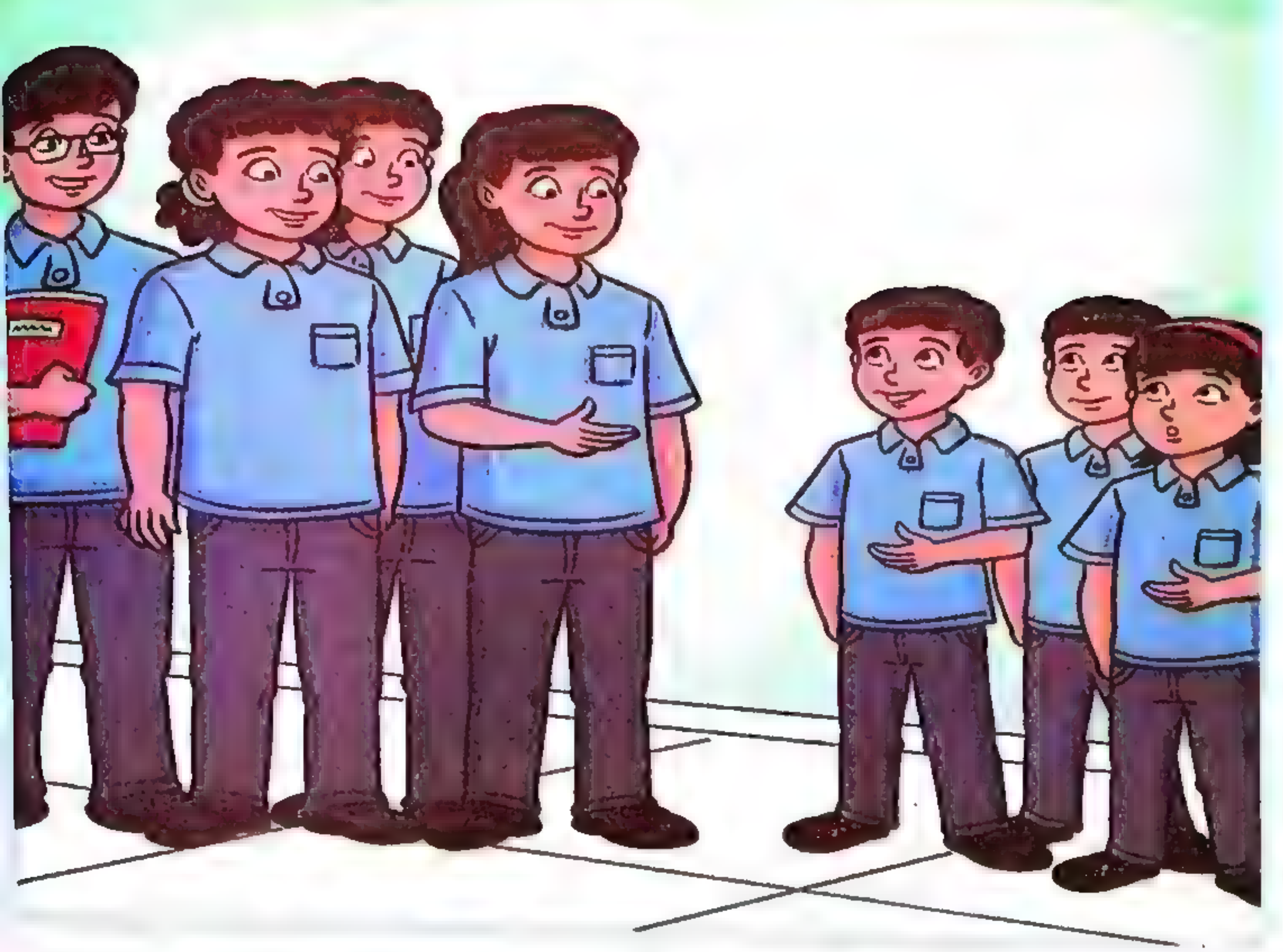
1. The family who lived near the school lost their dog. (..................)
2. The newspaper team made a flyer about kitty. (..................)
3. The school football team was in the finals of the games. (..................)
4. Bassant was writing a report about a scientist. (..................)
5. Nadine had all her photos ready. (..................)
6. Bassant went to check the paper for printing. (..................)
7. Mr Medhat was on holiday. (..................)
8. On social media, people use videos to tell stories. (..................)
9. The friends had a problem with printing. (..................)
10. The newspaper team were sad but nervous. (..................)

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. Who did Nadine and Bassant find? ....
2. What was Bassant writing a report about? ....
3. Why was the family sad? ....
4. Who was writing about the school volleyball team? ....
5. What was the problem the team faced? ....
6. Who was away on holiday? ....
7. What was Mrs Basma's idea? ....
8. How was Mrs Basma when Bassant and Nadine talked to her? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

part (3) The End



In the morning, Mrs Basma helped them to put the articles and the videos on the school website. The younger students came to school and started looking around.

"Hi," they said. "Where is the newspaper, please? We'd like to read that article about our class." They looked a bit worried, but the newspaper team made them feel better.

"Just go to the school website," said Nadine. "All the stories are there."

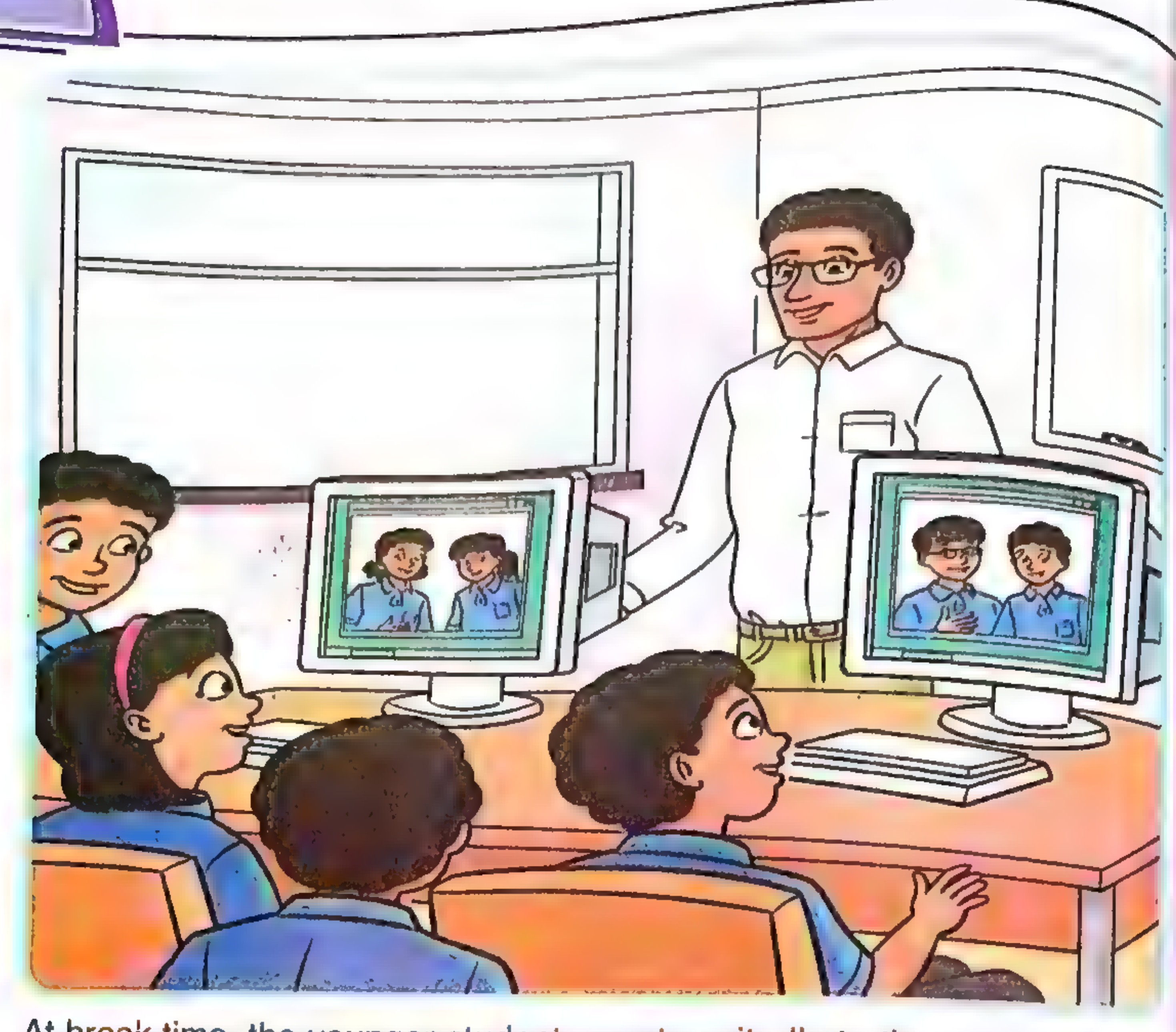
وفي الصباح، ساعدتهم الأستاذة بسمة في وضع المقالات ومقاطع الفيديو على موقع المدرسة. جاء الطلاب الأصغر سنًا إلى المدرسة وبدأوا في التجول.

قالوا: "مرحبًا أين الصحيفة من فضلكم؟ نود أن نقرأ هذا المقال عن فصلنا." لقد بدوا قلقين بعض الشيء، لكن فريق الصحيفة طمأنهم.

قالت نادين: "فقط ادخلوا إلى موقع المدرسة كل الأخبار موجودة هناك."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



At break time, the younger students went excitedly to the computer room and turned on the computers. They found the newspaper website quickly.
"The videos are a bit unclear!" said one student.
"And I can't hear their voices very well," said another.
"Just be kind," said their teacher. "This is the first time they've made videos. It will get easier for them. They wrote the stories, too, so you can read the news articles if you want."

وفي وقت الفسحة، ذهب الطلاب الصغار متحمسين إلى غرفة الكمبيوتر وقاموا بتشغيل أجهزة الكمبيوتر. وجدوا موقع الصحيفة بسرعة.

قال أحد الطلاب: "مقاطع الفيديو غير واضحة بعض الشيء!"

وقال آخر: "ولا أستطيع سماع أصواتهم جيداً".

قال معلمهم: "فقط كونوا لطفاء هذه هي المرة الأولى التي يصنعون فيها مقاطع فيديو. سوف يصبح الأمر أسهل بالنسبة لهم. لقد كتبوا الأخبار أيضًا، لذا يمكنكم قراءة المقالات الإخبارية إذا كنتم تريدون ذلك."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Later in the year, it did get easier for the newspaper team. They stopped printing the newspaper. They always did the news reports on video, and wrote their articles for the school website. Everybody at the school loved watching their news reports.

The local newspaper in their town heard about what the children were doing. A reporter came to interview them.

“This is awesome!” said Hatem. “Now someone is reporting on us, and we’re the news!”

“Yes,” said Nadine. “It’s very exciting.”

وفي وقت لاحق من العام، أصبح الأمر أسهل بالنسبة لفريق الصحيفة. توقفوا عن طباعة الصحيفة. وانتقلوا إلى إعداد تقارير إخبارية مصورة، وكتبوا مقالاتهم لموقع المدرسة على الإنترنت. أحب الجميع في المدرسة مشاهدة تقاريرهم الإخبارية.

سمعت الصحيفة المحلية في بلدتهم عما يفعله الأطفال.

وجاء أحد المراسلين لمقابلتهم.

قال حاتم: "هذا رائع! الآن هناك من يقدم تقارير عنا، ونحن الأخبار!"

قالت نادين: "نعم." "إنه أمر مثير للغاية."



The newspaper team's success was good for the school, too. Many of the younger children became motivated to create something themselves. Some children decided to write news reports in English, and others made videos. This helped them all to communicate better. They became more confident in writing and speaking in English. Some of them thought about a career in television, or at a newspaper, for when they got older.

كان نجاح فريق الصحيفة مفيدًا للمدرسة أيضًا. أصبح العديد من الأطفال الصغار متحمسين لإنشاء شيء ما بأنفسهم. قرر بعض الأطفال كتابة تقارير إخبارية باللغة الإنجليزية، وقام آخرون بتصوير مقاطع فيديو. وقد ساعدهم هذا جميعًا على التواصل بشكل أفضل. وأصبحوا أكثر ثقة في الكتابة والتحدث باللغة الإنجليزية. وفكر بعضهم في العمل في التلفزيون أو في إحدى الصحف عندما يكبرون.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرا و يتابع احداث القصة.



Now, Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are all adults, and they all work in the news.

Hatem is a famous journalist. He writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo. Tarek loves television, and he now works as a **producer** for a sports program. Bassant works as a science reporter and writes about climate change. Nadine is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events.

And that shows you how important what we do at school is for our future!

الآن حاتم وطارق وبسنت ونادين كلهم كبار، وجميعهم يعملون في الأخبار.
حاتم صحفي مشهور. يكتب في أكبر صحيفة في القاهرة. طارق يحب التلفاز، ويعمل الآن منتجاً لبرنامج رياضي. تع
بسنت كمراسل علمي وتكتب عن تغير المناخ. نادين مصورة تسافر حول العالم وتلتقط صوراً للأحداث المهمة
وهذا يوضح لك مدى أهمية ما نقوم به في المدرسة لمستقبلنا!

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



1 Read and write YES or NO.

1. The younger students came to school. (..................)
2. All the stories are on the school website now. (..................)
3. The younger students went to the library. (..................)
4. The newspaper team's success was good for the school. (..................)
5. Some children decided to write news in French. (..................)
6. The videos are very clear. (..................)
7. Everybody at school loved watching their news reports. (..................)
8. Hatem is now a famous journalist. (..................)
9. Tarek works as a producer for a sports program. (..................)
10. Nadine is a doctor. (..................)

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. How did Mrs Basma help the team? ....
2. How did the younger students look? ....
3. When did the younger students go excitedly to the computer room? ....
4. Was the school team successful? ....
5. What does Hatem write for? ....
6. What is Nadine's job? ....
7. Why weren't the videos good? ....
8. What does Bassant do now? ....

General Activities

1 Read and write YES or NO.

1. Bassant interviewed the newspaper team about their work. (.........)
2. Hatem motivated younger children to think about climate change. (.........)
3. Mrs Basma was the editor. (.........)
4. Nadine was interested in sports. (.........)
5. Tarek was the photographer in the newspaper team. (.........)
6. The children put their news reports on the school website. (.........)
7. The students wanted to start a newspaper to become famous. (.........)
8. Tarek reported on the school sports day. (.........)
9. The team helped to find a lost dog called Reggie. (.........)
10. The first time the team made a news report on video, it wasn't perfect. (.........)
11. Hatem is a famous journalist now. (.........)
12. The videos are very clear. (.........)

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was a good leader? ....
2. Who gave Tarek information about sports at the school? ....
3. What did Bassant organize? ....
4. What did Nadine like to do outside of school? ....
5. Where was the exhibition "Art is for everybody!"? ....
6. What did the local man do when he found Kitty? ....
7. What did the team not have enough of to print the newspaper? ....
8. What was the problem with the team's first video? ....

Listening Texts

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago. He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. As a child, he was fascinated by the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather, who were great sailors.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I decided to travel around the world and see as many countries as possible. My mom said "yes"! I was so excited! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair, so we had to be very organized, but that wasn't a problem. We filled in the forms to tell the train and plane staff about my disability.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man who is a world-record-holding athlete. He shows that when you work hard, you can achieve amazing things. He is very inspiring, but his life has not always been easy.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Would you like to be an astronaut? It's a great career, but you need to work very hard. First of all, you should study science at school and university. After this, you need to do a difficult, two-year astronaut course. If you are chosen to join the next space trip, you are very lucky!

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most ambitious adventurers. She's the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest. Her dad was a mountaineering guide, so he often took her on trips with him.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The men got up at 5:30 the next day, and walked together through the desert road. They carried backpacks on their backs with water and snacks. The men enjoyed chatting about their lives and their families.

Activities on Unit (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

After a while, the friends came to an oasis, and saw a beautiful deer with big eyes. When they got closer, the deer ran away, and there was a noise in the leaves. They saw that the deer was back with her baby. It was a beautiful scene.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Every year we have a garage sale at our school. This means volunteers from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen equipment. These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. These items are sold to anyone who would like to buy them. The money we collect is used to help children who need health care in hospitals.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India – Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied journalism at university.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Every year, Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle, and cousin, Remas, at their home. It was a peaceful place near a river. She and her cousin always went for walks by the river, and talked to the fishermen there. Last year, when she visited, things were different. When Nadine got to the river, she saw dead fish in the water. It was very quiet there, too.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was awesome! Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the races. We think all the parents loved it, too!

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Farmer Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife, Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They didn't have a lot of land, but they had enough to grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh kept sheep and chickens, and the children helped him look after them. Amina grew fava beans so she could make delicious ful mudamas.

Activities on Unit (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a hutch in the school garden. He loves carrots and lettuce! My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets and be responsible. Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet. He comes in once a week to check on Crunchy.

Review (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

At the age of 25, Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to the hospital, where the doctors removed part of his leg. Then, Omar heard about two disabled athletes, and he wanted to be like them. He started training hard and working on his fitness.

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Having takeaway food with friends and family is great. However, plastic knives, forks, and spoons are bad for the planet. We usually use plastic cutlery once, then throw it away. Plastic doesn't decompose, so it stays in the ground for a long time.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Mazen, Fares, and Wael were excited. It was the day of the school trip to the science museum, and they couldn't wait.They all got on the bus. "OK, children," said Ms Amal, "there's an exhibition about driverless cars at the museum, and we're going to do a school project about it.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've existed for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention!

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the ocean and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad effect on sea life: turtles, fish, and jellyfish, for example. Some animals think the plastic is food, and so they eat it and become sick. Some animals get trapped in the plastic and are hurt.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

One morning, Rania was in her yard. She could hear her neighbor, Mr Hamdy. Every morning, he went outside and filled his birdfeeders. Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds.

Activities on Unit (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean teeth were important to them, so they invented a type of toothpaste. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flcwers, mint, and pepper into a paste. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as almost as good as modern toothpaste!

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Last week, I visited my friend Anas. He was quiet and sad. I tried to make him happy. I told him some jokes but he didn't laugh. So I decided to hive him some space and wait for him to tell me the problem.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

My parents are very busy this week, so I'm making dinner this evening. My sisters are going to the store this afternoon to buy the food we need. Then, at five o'clock, I'm cooking my parents' favorite meal. It's hawawshi! It will be a surprise. I really like doing more to help at home.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

To prepare for important events or competitions you should ask for advice. They should be fun to take part. Getting enough sleep will give you more energy. Also being a part of a team is great.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

When you take part in a new sport, you can easily make new friends. You might meet new people that you haven't met before. Playing together as a team in a game or a competition is a great experience, and you might make friends for life.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

My mom asked me to try my best. "You can't go wrong," she said. " But don't forget to have a break! When you're tired, go to bed!"

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident – I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The group couldn't fix the map, so they held the two pieces together. The map was difficult to read, and they weren't sure where to go. Seleem knew they had to go north, so he asked Asser for his compass. Asser looked in his bag, but he didn't have it!

Activities on Unit (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum. When I'm older, I'd like to be a scientist or an inventor. My science teacher told me to work hard so that I could help people and make lives better.

Review (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean teeth were important to them, so they invented a type of toothpaste. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, mint, and pepper into a paste. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as almost as good as modern toothpaste!